Dramatic Moments in American History

HAGUE and CHALMERS

THE UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

BOARD OF EDUCATION

CITY OF NEW YORK

Public School No. 63 *Borough of* Manh.

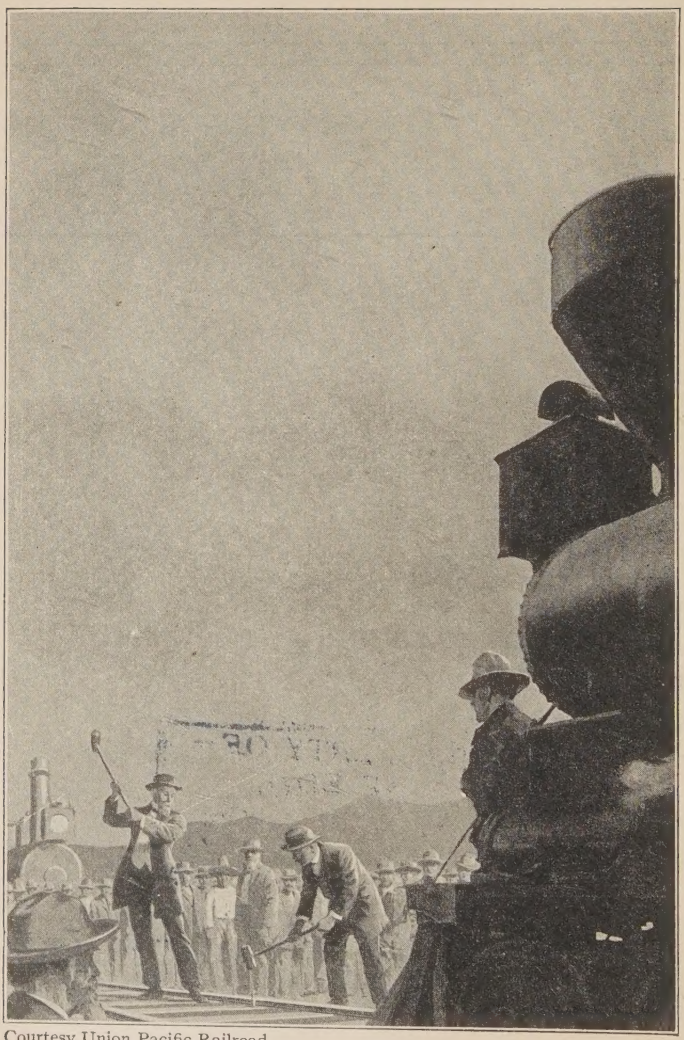
NAME	CLASS	DATE ISSUED	CONDITION WHEN ISSUED	CONDITION WHEN RECEIVED
Sarah Perlman	8B'	3/3/29	New	8
Grace DeDomina	8B'	4/10/31	Good	

PUBLIC SCHOOL 63, MAN.
121 E. 3rd ST.
LENA KEMP, Prin.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/dramaticmomentsi0000unse_e2b4

DRAMATIC MOMENTS IN AMERICAN HISTORY



Courtesy Union Pacific Railroad

DRIVING THE LAST SPIKE ON THE TRANSCONTINENTAL RAILROAD

Dramatic Moments in American History

AN HISTORICAL DRAMATIC READER FOR ELEMENTARY GRADES AND FOR JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

By ELIZABETH F. HAGUE, *Assistant Principal in the William McKinley School, New York City, and* MARY CHALMERS, *Instructor of History in the Corlears Junior High School, New York City.*

The University Publishing Company
LINCOLN CHICAGO DALLAS NEW YORK
1927

COPYRIGHT, 1926
THE UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

All Rights Reserved

Foreword

DRAMATIC MOMENTS in American History aims to present historical characters and outstanding episodes in the story of our country in such a manner as to make history vital, interesting, and real. As these plays are read or acted, the children will themselves experience, in a most interesting way, the struggles and problems with which the makers of history, whom they represent, had to contend. As a result, the past becomes to them a living thing and historical characters become real and fascinating.

Used as a supplementary reader in connection with the regular history text book of the grade or in connection with the regular reading work, this volume is extremely effective, offering as it does an interesting, novel, and effective method of review from the landing of the Pilgrims to the present time. The assignments and projects serve to correlate the history work with geography, composition, reading, and nature study. The opportunity to do independent research work is offered through the projects and exercises at the end of each play. The lines set in small capitals are, according to eminent historians, the exact words of the speakers and writers in the given historical situations. *For Faith and Freedom* was published by the authors in a school magazine, and was successfully produced on the occasion of the three hundredth anniversary of the landing of the Pilgrims. The play is reprinted by the courteous permission of the Educational Publishing Company.

School projects offered by the chapters on *How to Write a Play and How to Produce a Play* are the result of many years of successful experience in producing school plays and school pageants. All the plays in this book have been successfully produced by school children. Their production according to this plan secures harmonious and effective coöperation of the school faculty, the closer adjustment of the several school departments, and effects a more sympathetic understanding and relationship between the

home and the school through the active interest and support of parents.

We desire to acknowledge our indebtedness to the many teachers who have assisted in the successful production of these plays. Our especial thanks are due Miss Lena Kemp and the teachers of the William McKinley School, New York City; and to Prin. Leo Kearney of Public School No. 18, Manhattan, for their helpful coöperation and valuable assistance.

ELIZABETH F. HAGUE
MARY CHALMERS

Contents

		PAGE
1.	For Faith and Freedom	1
2.	Nathan Hale	24
3.	When Old New York Was Young	51
4.	Benjamin Franklin	68
5.	George Rogers Clark	89
6.	The Making of the Constitution	105
7.	Dolly Madison	129
8.	The Lone Star State	152
9.	The Tie That Binds	175
10.	Daniel Webster	199
11.	Manifest Destiny	212
12.	A House Divided	247
13.	World Concord	296
14.	How to Produce an Historical Play	315
15.	How to Write an Historical Play	323
16.	Suggested References	337

Illustrations

		PAGE
1.	Driving the Last Spike on the Transcontinental Railroad	*Frontispiece*
2.	"Where We Shine Not the Nations Perish"	3
3.	Pupils Impersonating Puritan and Indian Children	11
4.	Paul Revere Spreading the Alarm	15
5.	The Birthplace of Nathan Hale	25
6.	Where Nathan Hale Taught School	27
7.	The Chichester Inn, Near Huntington, Long Island	41
8.	The Execution of Nathan Hale	46
9.	Peter Stuyvesant, the Last Dutch Governor of the New Netherlands	57
10.	The Beekman Mansion, New York City	61
11.	The Junction of Pearl and Chatham Streets, New York City, In Early Days	65
12.	Deborah Read Meets Benjamin Franklin on His Arrival in Philadelphia	71
13.	Franklin's Famous Kite Experiment	77
14.	Benjamin Franklin at the French Court	83
15.	Pupils Acting as Pioneers	91
16.	Famous Pioneers	93
17.	The Virginia House of Burgesses in Session	95
18.	A History Class Representing the Constitutional Convention in Session	110
19.	A Scene Showing George Washington Taking the Oath of Office	118
20.	Delegates at the Constitutional Convention	125
21.	Dolly Madison as She Appeared in Her Later Years	133
22.	A Scene Showing Boys Dressed for Dolly Madison's Ball	137
23.	The White House Before It Was Burned by the British in 1814	142

PAGE

24. The Sea Fight Between the Constitution and the Guerriere 147
25. General Sam Houston 155
26. The Alamo, San Antonio, Texas 161
27. Santa Anna, President of Mexico, Taken Prisoner and Brought Before General Houston 165
28. The Flags of Texas 172
29. "Flying Stage Coaches" 177
30. The De Witt Railway Train, 1831 187
31. The Development of the Modern Railroad Locomotive 189
32. The Completion of the Pacific Railroad 196
33. Daniel Webster Replying to Robert Hayne 209
34. Girls on Parade Representing the Original Thirteen States 215
35. The Raising of the American Flag at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba 229
36. The Battle of Manila Bay 231
37. Naval and Mercantile Vessels Passing Through Locks in the Panama Canal 240
38. The Statue of Abraham Lincoln 253
39. Lincoln Reading the Emancipation Proclamation 265
40. Lincoln Delivering His Gettysburg Address 270
41. The Surrender of General Lee to General Grant 290
42. New York School Girls in a Peace Pageant 305
43. A Peace Conference in Session at the Hague 309
44. The League of Nations in Session at Geneva 311
45. School Children Acting as British Soldiers Guarding Nathan Hale 317
46. Framework, Covering, and Leaves for the Nathan Hale Play, Made by Boys and Girls 310

For Faith and Freedom

CHARACTERS

Father Time
Faith
Freedom
Lavender Seller
First Gentleman
Second Gentleman
Third Gentleman
Chimney Sweep
Fourth Gentleman
Student
*Brewster
Cavalier
Town Crier
Child
Father
First Bowler
Second Bowler
Burgomaster
First Puritan
Third Bowler
Second Puritan
Little Dutch Girl
Puritan Child
*Bradford
Watchman
*Massasoit
Prophetess
*John Alden
*Priscilla Alden
*Paul Revere
British Officer
Messenger
First Guardsman
Second Guardsman
First Woman
Second Woman
*Miles Standish
A Father
A Mother
A Daughter
A Son
American Soldier

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

PROLOGUE

A STAGE *is set with a large black globe suspended between two dark blue curtains. On either side of the stage curtains fall to the ground. These may be a dark green that will harmonize with the midnight blue of the back drop.*

The size of the stage depends upon the number of participants in the various units. The platform, thirty inches high by ten feet long and eight feet wide, should be placed in the center of the stage, so the rear of the platform is in line with the rear of the stage. There are exits right and left at the rear on the platform and exits right

and left rear on the stage. At the rear of the platform is a roll or drop curtain which is the length of the platform. It is this curtain which exposes the ship in Act One, the rock in Act Three, the belfry in Act Four, and the starry field and globe in the Prologue and Epilogue. A stage curtain is not absolutely essential as the acts may be announced either by pages or by placards placed right and left on the stage. A light behind the curtain must show gleaming points of starlight, but no light must shine through the earth.

FATHER TIME (*seated on steps, looking intently at the earth*). Never, since first I walked among the starry spaces, was the earth so dark. There have been evil days, but always there has been some gleam of light, and now it is dark, all dark. Are holy fires dead? Or is the light obscured by some thicker cloud than ever man before created? Is all that makes light shine from man blotted out?

(*A slight glow appears on either side of the dark globe. Faith, wearing a bright crown, and Freedom, carrying a torch, step out from either side of the globe.*)

FAITH. Nay, nay, Father Time, my light still shines. I lit the fire that was a lamp unto Man's feet on the long road up which he climbed from the darkness of the early ages.

FREEDOM. My spark glows brightly underneath the clouds created by greed of wealth and land and pride of power. Might draws the sword, but Faith and Freedom have given to Man a shield for his protection.

FATHER TIME (*shaking his head*). It may be as you say. I do recall in other days—

FAITH (TO FATHER TIME): "WHERE WE SHINE NOT THE NATIONS PERISH"

FAITH *(interrupting)*. As the procession of the centuries has marched past there have been those who suffered and were strong so that their children might be free. They, in their turn, passed on the torch kept blazing by their sacrifice.

FREEDOM (*raises her torch high, and Faith's crown lights brilliantly*). Look back across the years.

(*Father Time reverses his position.*)

FAITH. Where we shine not, the nations perish.

FATHER TIME (*slowly turns back as he speaks*). Faith and Freedom! Through all the ages twin guides of men. Greece, Judea, Rome, walked by thy light, and when their hearts grew dark, thy fire leaped to glow within the breasts of France and England. Then, safe sheltered within English souls, westward across the sea it lit a flame that burns a beacon for the world.

These be dark days. Men doubt and grow afraid, and lest their hearts grow weak, let them look back across the years as I have looked and take fresh courage for the fight.

[*Curtain*]

ACT I

Place: Scrooby, England.
Time: May Day, 1607.

Same floor plan as in prologue. Before the inn door, at a table eating, sit four men in the dress of Cavaliers. The Lavender Seller comes in calling "Sweet Lavender."

LAVENDER SELLER (*to man at table*). A farthing a bunch, sweet lavender, pretty gentlemen, buy my wares.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Is its scent stronger than the smell of those pestilent Puritans of this town?

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Nothing can drown that. Go thy way, wench, there is no market for thy wares here.

(*The Chimney Sweep comes through.*)

THIRD GENTLEMAN. Hey, Varlet! Do you go to sweep away sedition? These Roundheads defy the king.

CHIMNEY SWEEP. My business is with foul chimneys. I can sweep them as clean as the King would sweep England of psalm singing. (*Goes by. Townspeople, some soldiers and students come in through either entrance. They group on either side of the table.*)

FOURTH GENTLEMAN. 'Tis May Day, and you are not singing. Have you forgot our good English

catches? Sing one, I beg, but no drawling through the nose as you were crop-eared Puritans.

(*The groups look at each other a moment, then the Chimney Sweep with his broom makes a move as though to conduct, and a group starts "Summer is a Cumen In,"—found in any book of old English folk songs. Just as that is completed three strolling musicians enter from the right, followed by children dragging a May Pole. They set the pole up and dance Sellinger's Round,—found in any English folk-dance book. As the dance ends a fifth Cavalier comes in.*)

CAVALIER. Well danced. England is "Merry England" still, in spite of psalm singing and defiance of the King's Majesty. (*Turns to students.*) Do any of you know one Brewster?

A STUDENT. Yonder he comes.

(*Brewster, with another man, a woman, and two children, enters.*)

CROWD. Hey! Crop-ears! Roundheads!

(*The children cling to their mother. Brewster and the other man stop, confronting the fifth Cavalier, center stage.*)

CHIMNEY SWEEP. Master Brewster, here be one inquiring for thee. If he came not from the King's Majesty, I would say his wit was as short as thy hair.

BREWSTER (*smiling, turns to Cavalier*). You seek me, Sir?

CAVALIER. On the King's business. It hath been rumored that in this, his Majesty's town of Scroosby, there be meetings held in defiance of his royal commands, led by you, his subject. (*Crowd hoots.*)

BREWSTER. I serve a greater King than James, and I obey the word of the Most High.

CROWD. Treason! Treason! Bravely spoken!

(*These cries come from different groups to show a division of opinion.*)

CAVALIER. Dangerous words, Sir Puritan, and most impious, for the King is divinely ordained of God to rule this land. The King can do no wrong. You may find yourself and your followers in the King's dungeon and you cease not these meetings.

BREWSTER. The King may bind my body, but the might of the Lord God will protect my soul. (*Then with great emphasis, indicating his companions and himself.*) We walk by faith, for we know "THERE IS AN ETERNAL LAW OF GOD WHICH KINGS NO LESS THAN COMMONS MUST OBEY."

(*Crowd hoots and makes a threatening move toward the group. The Chimney Sweep and a few others stand by, silent.*

TOWN CRIER. The King's players! The King's players!

(*The crowds shout and clap their hands.*)

CROWD. To the Market Place.

(*Led by the musicians playing, "Drink To Me Only with Thine Eyes," they wind out to the left. The group of Puritans is left alone on the stage.*)

CHILD. Father, I don't want to go to prison.

FATHER. Courage, my son. God will lead us out of the house of bondage into the promised land where we may find freedom to worship Him as conscience directs.

BREWSTER. There is a ship that sails for Holland in ten days. The time has come when we must leave England unless we would be slaves to the King instead of servants of God.

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Delfthaven, *Holland.*
Time: 1620.

Same floor plan as in Prologue. The center stage shows the prow of a ship with the foremast. The front of the stage is set with gay flowering tulips. The base is a bowling green on which a game is in progress. The burgomaster sits on a bench at the side smoking his pipe.

FIRST BOWLER. Well bowled.

(*Another shot is made.*)

SECOND BOWLER. I'm far from the mark.

(*Children clatter in in their sabots. They dance the Dutch Wooden Shoe Dance, found in "Folk Dances of All Nations." Bowlers stop to watch them. Two milkmaids carrying copper, brass or tin pails from yokes on their shoulders walk in on the right. The dance is interrupted by the entrance of a group of Puritans carrying their belongings. These may consist of bags, bales, bundles, and baskets. This group must consist of old men and women, young men and women, and children.*)

THE BURGOMASTER. You leave Holland to-night?

FIRST PURITAN. Yea. We go to New England. The Mayflower waits the tide.

BURGOMASTER. 'Tis a great distance off, and you will be beset by many dangers, and much hardship.

THIRD BOWLER. How will you support yourselves?

SECOND PURITAN. By fishing. It was the Apostles' own calling.

LITTLE DUTCH GIRL (*running up and kissing a puritan child*). Stay here with us. I am afraid Indians will kill you, or a bear might eat you.

PURITAN CHILD. I am sometimes afraid, too, but I must go with my mother. My father has his gun, too. Elder Brewster says God will take care of us.

BURGOMASTER. I am sorry to part with you. (*To Brewster.*) I trust that you will not regret this step when it is too late.

BRADFORD. "IT IS NOT WITH US AS WITH MEN WHOM SMALL THINGS CAN DISCOURAGE, OR SMALL DISCONTENTMENTS CAUSE TO WISH THEMSELVES HOME AGAIN."

BURGOMASTER. God's blessing be upon your undertaking, Friend Bradford.

(*Enter drummer leading Night Watch.*)

BURGOMASTER (*to crowd*). Let us speed our friends on their way with our mighty hymn.

(*Crowd sings the hymn "We Gather Together to Ask the Lord's Blessing." Puritans file out to cries of God speed, God bless you, Good-bye! Night Watch goes out to the right. Stage darkens. Crowd drifts away to the right and to the left. Light appears on foremast of the ship in the back drop. Night watchman, carrying staff and lantern, comes in on the right, moves slowly to the center; bell strikes nine times.*)

WATCHMAN. Nine o'clock and all's well.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: Plymouth, Massachusetts.
Time: Thanksgiving Day, 1621.

Same floor plan as in Prologue. Stage set with plain dark green curtains. Center curtain blue. Center of stage a rock. Pilgrim with matchlock stands beside rock on guard. Below stage a camp fire blazes. It supplies the only light. Around it lie Indian braves, squaws, and children. There is complete silence for a minute when curtain rises. Then a child whimpers, there is a slight stir among the Indians and a squaw croons a lullaby. See Cadman's Indian Song Book, published by White & Smith Music Publishers Co., N. Y. The group sinks back to silence. Then the light of the fire grows fainter and the gray dawn begins to come. Then the Prophetess rises from where she has been crouched a little to one side, mounts the steps of the stage and facing the still sleeping camp sings Sunrise Song, called the "Echo Song," published by T. Presser Co., Philadelphia, Pa. Then she descends the steps. The camp awakes. Another sentinel takes the place of the one who has been on guard. The fire is mended and blazes up. A pot is swung over it. Braves go out right and left. Light increases. A group of Pilgrims led by Miles Standish appears carrying a deer slung between two men. Indians and Pilgrims pass across the stage carrying wild turkeys, deer, pumpkins, and fish.

Bradford, Brewster, Winslow, John Alden, Priscilla Alden, Miles Standish, and other pilgrims come in at the

right and at the left, but group to the right. Indians headed by Massasoit group on the left. Bradford steps forward and addresses the crowd.

BRADFORD. Friends, we have gathered here at the end of harvest to rejoice in a special manner, that the Lord should have blessed our labor and that we should have gathered in its fruits. I have directed that four of our number should go out with fowling pieces and bring in such game as shall furnish forth a feast for our neighbors and for us, now that we have thanked God for his many mercies, in having brought us to this land where we may live in freedom after the faith that we hold.

(*Cries from Indians, and some shouts of "Praise God" from the Pilgrims.*)

MASSASOIT (*stepping forward*). When first the white man came to these shores, brought by great birds with spreading white wings, we feared him and worshipped, for he carried the lightning and thunder in his hand and could smite us mightily.

Then we hated him for he with his gun might drive us from the land, and so we felt him to be an enemy. But when a sore sickness fell upon me and the white chief by his good medicine made me well, I knew that the white men and the red were brothers.

PROPHETESS. Now they are few and we many, but I can see the great white birds bringing many more pale faces. They come across the great water, tribe after tribe, as many as the sands on the shore.

BRADFORD. Perhaps, who can say. Those who would be free and who walk by faith with courage may seek this land.

Courtesy J. Philippson

PUPILS IMPERSONATING PURITAN AND INDIAN CHILDREN OF COLONIAL DAYS

Let us now exercise our arms and show each, the other, how we excel.

MASSASOIT. Let your braves show their skill.

(*Business of shooting arrows at a mark. Pilgrims not as successful. Indians want to handle guns, but afraid. Indians dance.*)

BREWSTER. The sun is going down. Let us sing our psalm of thanksgiving.

(*Pilgrims sing, from the Massachusetts Bay Psalm Book.*)

The Lord to me a shepherd is,
Want therefore shall not I.
He in the folds of tender grass
Doth cast me down to lie,
To waters calm me gently leads
Restore my soul, doth he,
He doth in paths of righteousness
For his name's sake lead me.
Yea though in the valley of death's shade
I walk, none ill I'll fear
Because thou art with me; thy rod
And staff, my comfort are.

For me a table thou hast spread
In presence of my foes,
Thou dost anoint my head with oil
My cup it over-flows.
Goodness and mercy surely shall
All my days follow me,
And in the Lord's house I shall dwell
So long as days shall be.

(*Indians and Pilgrims exeunt to the right and to the left, leaving John Alden and Priscilla. Pilgrims' guard comes down the steps, gives gun to John, whose turn it is to do guard duty. He mounts the steps, stands beside the rock, Priscilla sits on the step.*)

JOHN ALDEN. It hath been a wonderful day, Priscilla.

PRISCILLA ALDEN. Yea, but my heart hath turned many times toward those graves on the hillside, sweet Rose Standish, and my own kin.

JOHN ALDEN. They are with all that noble army of martyrs who died for the thing they believed to be true.

PRISCILLA ALDEN. They died as we must live, for Faith and Freedom.

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

SCENE I

Place: Exterior of Old North Church.
Time: Early evening, April 18, 1775.

Same floor plan as in Prologue. Above platform the curtain is rolled up, exposing outline of the steeple of the Old North Church. The stage is darkened. Enter Paul Revere, left, dressed in coat, riding boots, spurs, and

carrying a riding crop. He wears a black colonial hat, his hair tied with black ribbon. He looks about as though expecting somebody. Becomes disappointed and impatient. Enter Watchman, right. He is dressed like Revere except that he wears a coat and no spurs. He carries two lanterns which he places upon the steps. He sees Revere.

WATCHMAN. Ah! there you are, Revere, always on time.

PAUL REVERE. All my time will be needed this night. The British are astir. They are being moved about quietly and they are fully *armed*. There will be trouble before morning so keep a sharp look out. You brought the lanterns? Remember, if they leave by land, one lantern in the belfry. If they leave by sea, two. I'll be on the opposite shore ready to spread the alarm for all our countrymen to be up and to arm. Watch closely and keep out of sight. They will probably pass this way. Farewell.

(*Exit Revere hurriedly to the right. Watchman goes to the exit to watch the departure of Revere, and then turns back to light his lanterns. He listens, then prepares to strike the tinder box, stops, listens. He hears troops approach. He seizes the lanterns and escapes through the exit to the left of the platform, just as a troop of British regulars enters led by an officer. They enter cautiously and stealthily. The soldiers are dressed in the regulation uniform with red coats, and carry muskets. They walk quietly across stage to right, four abreast, until all are on.*)

BRITISH OFFICER (*raising hand, in stage whisper*). Company halt! Order arms! Fall out!

(*Soldiers lower muskets silently to the ground and gather in groups to converse in whispers, drink from canteens, etc. British officer goes to the platform and sits upon lowest step. He draws out a military map and studies it. One soldier of the middle group whispers something which causes the next soldier to start a hearty laugh. Another soldier places a hand over his mouth to keep him silent. A soldier in another group sneezes loudly, and all the others say "Sh!" and look about cautiously. Enter a British army messenger. He goes quietly to the British officer and salutes.*)

MESSENGER (*in stage whisper*). General Gates presents his compliments, sir, and directs that you proceed immediately to the wharf where boats will be waiting. You are to be rowed across the bay to the Point where you will land and march in all haste on Lexington and Concord. (*Messenger salutes, and exits quietly to the right.*)

BRITISH OFFICER (*in stage whisper*). Company fall in!

(*Soldiers quickly and quietly arrange themselves in marching order and exeunt to the right. The Watchman in hiding enters and follows them to exit and shakes his fist at the departing soldiers.*)

WATCHMAN. So you think you will surprise us! Well, you will find us prepared. The Spirit of Freedom never sleeps. (*He goes to the left exit, upon the platform and turns at the exit facing the audience.*)

"One if by land, and two if by sea,
And he on the opposite shore will be,
Ready to ride and spread the alarm
Through every Middlesex village and farm
For the country folk to be up and to arm."

Courtesy D. W. Griffith

PAUL REVERE SPREADING THE ALARM "THROUGH EVERY MIDDLESEX VILLAGE AND FARM"

(He exits at the last line. There soon appears one lantern in the belfry and then a second.)

[*Curtain*]

SCENE II

Place: Common at Lexington.
Time: April 19, 1775.

Same plan of floor as in Prologue. Two Colonial Guardsmen, dressed similarly to Paul Revere, but wearing coats. The First Guardsman is seated on a log, left stage. His musket rests upon the log near him. The Second Guardsman is standing near the right exit, leaning upon his musket and looking off stage.

FIRST GUARDSMAN. The Vigilance Committee men in Boston are watching every move of the soldiers.

SECOND GUARDSMAN. They are wise to do so. The British want our powder, but they will never get what rightfully belongs to us.

FIRST GUARDSMAN. Never! Their acts of op-

pression are steadily forcing to the surface that same spirit of freedom which induced our ancestors to brave the hardships and dangers of these shores, and —if they keep it up—(*he stops, seizes his gun*). Who goes there! (*Female voice off stage answers "Friend."*)

SECOND GUARDSMAN. Women! (*Enter three women with baskets and bundles.*) Where are you going?

FIRST WOMAN. To the woods to bury our treasures. We fear a British raid.

SECOND GUARDSMAN. A wise precaution, ladies. But if you have anything of which to make bullets, we may need it.

SECOND WOMAN. We are hiding our pewter now, but if our own men need it, we will melt it all into bullets, yes, even this bowl which is my dearest treasure, brought over by the first pilgrims.

FIRST GUARDSMAN. That's the spirit. Sacrifice is sister to Freedom. (*The women exeunt to the left.*) Hark! Do you hear anything?

SECOND GUARDSMAN (*listening*). A horseman.

FIRST GUARDSMAN. Ay, and coming fast! There must be important news. (*Goes to exit right.*) Halt! Who goes there? (*The sound of the galloping horse stops.*)

PAUL REVERE (*off stage*). Paul Revere, Messenger from Boston. The armed regulars are coming. Rouse the minute men. (*The sound of a galloping horse grows fainter. Dies away.*)

SECOND GUARDSMAN. I'll go this way. (*He crosses stage and exits to the left. First guardsman goes to the right and is about to exit when he encounters three minute men who enter hastily, carrying coats, muskets,*

and powder horns. They put on their coats and sling their powder horns over their shoulders.) The regulars are coming from Boston. (*Sound of fife and drum off stage. Enter from left a colonial officer followed by an old man playing a fife, with a drummer boy on each side—Spirit of '76,—and a group of minute men. The other minute men and the guardsman fall into line and march across the stage to right to tune of Yankee Doodle and exeunt.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT V

Place: An American Home.
Time: April 3, 1917, 7:30 A.M.

The curtain rises showing a typical dining room. Four chairs are placed at the table, which is set for breakfast. There is an exit to the right leading to the kitchen, and an exit to the left leading to the front entrance hall. Through this exit can be seen the street door and the lower steps of the staircase leading to the floor above. The mother, a woman of middle age, is placing a pot of coffee, from her tray, upon the table. The clock on the buffet strikes seven. The mother looks for the paper at the front door. There is no paper. She closes the door, re-enters the room, and takes the tray to the kitchen. The daughter, a young lady, comes downstairs and goes to see if the paper is at the front door. No paper is there. She takes her place at the table just as her brother enters.

Brother. Has the paper come, Sis?

Sister. Not yet. It is too early.

BROTHER. I'll go and get one. I can't wait. (*He rushes out. His sister closes the door but seems too anxious to think of breakfast. Her mother enters from the kitchen.*)

MOTHER. Your brother was at the armory late last night. He may have overslept. You had better call him.

SISTER. He is up, mother. He went to buy a paper.

MOTHER. We are all worried. I am afraid the crisis was reached last night. (*The father enters from the hall staircase.*)

FATHER. Has the paper come?

SISTER. No, dad, It's too early, so Howard went out to buy one.

FATHER. I waited for news until late last night, but the President's speech had not been received then.

MOTHER. I have been hoping against hope that we will not have to go to war.

SISTER. It will be a miracle if we keep out now.

(*Her brother rushes in, reading the headlines.*)

BROTHER. "PRESIDENT WILSON CALLS FOR WAR DECLARATION," "THE WORLD MUST BE MADE SAFE FOR DEMOCRACY," "A NEW ARMY OF 500,000 MEN," "STRONGER NAVY NEEDED."

FATHER. Congress will declare war immediately.

MOTHER. 500,000 men!

BROTHER. I am going to be one of them, mother dear!

SISTER. This had to come, I suppose.

BROTHER. We could not possibly have stayed out longer and have kept our self-respect. (*Reading from*

President Wilson's speech.) WE HAVE NO SELFISH ENDS TO SERVE. WE DESIRE NO INDEMNITIES FOR OURSELVES, NO MATERIAL COMPENSATION FOR THE SACRIFICES WE SHALL FREELY MAKE. WE ARE BUT ONE OF THE CHAMPIONS OF THE RIGHTS OF MANKIND. WE SHALL BE SATISFIED WHEN THESE RIGHTS HAVE BEEN MADE AS SECURE AS THE FAITH AND FREEDOM OF THE NATIONS CAN MAKE THEM.

FATHER. Faith, freedom, and justice are our great watchwords.

MOTHER. The President feels the terrible responsibility. He has not been too hasty.

BROTHER (*continuing*). IT IS A FEARFUL THING TO LEAD THIS GREAT PEACEFUL PEOPLE INTO WAR, INTO THE MOST TERRIBLE AND DISASTROUS OF ALL WARS, CIVILIZATION ITSELF SEEMING TO BE IN THE BALANCE. BUT THE RIGHT IS MORE PRECIOUS THAN PEACE, AND WE SHALL FIGHT FOR THE THINGS WHICH WE HAVE ALWAYS CARRIED NEAREST OUR HEARTS, FOR THE RIGHT OF THOSE WHO SUBMIT TO AUTHORITY TO HAVE A VOICE IN THEIR OWN GOVERNMENTS, FOR THE RIGHTS AND LIBERTIES OF SMALL NATIONS, FOR A UNIVERSAL DOMINION OF RIGHT BY SUCH A CONCERT OF FREE PEOPLES AS SHALL BRING PEACE AND SAFETY TO ALL NATIONS AND MAKE THE WORLD ITSELF AT LAST FREE.

MOTHER. THE RIGHT IS MORE PRECIOUS THAN PEACE. We must be brave and help, we who stay at home.

FATHER. We who stay behind must do the work of those men who will go to the front.

SISTER. And we girls can go into factories, stores, and offices.

BROTHER. That's the spirit. (*Continues to read.*) TO SUCH A TASK WE CAN DEDICATE OUR LIVES AND OUR FORTUNES, EVERYTHING THAT WE ARE AND EVERYTHING THAT WE HAVE, WITH THE PRIDE OF THOSE WHO KNOW THAT THE DAY HAS COME WHEN AMERICA IS PRIVILEGED TO SPEND HER BLOOD AND HER MIGHT FOR THE PRINCIPLES THAT GAVE HER BIRTH AND HAPPINESS AND THE PEACE WHICH SHE HAS TREASURED.

[*Curtain*]

EPILOGUE

The stage is set as in the Prologue, except that the globe is illumined. Time, Faith, and Freedom are discovered on platform.

FATHER TIME. The mists have cleared from about the earth and it glows. . . .

FAITH AND FREEDOM. With our undying light.

FREEDOM. The heir of the men who were our lantern bearers in the past guards our fires now.

FAITH. They have armed his soul to resist tyranny and evil.

FATHER TIME. Ye stars, sound the call that the son of these mighty spirits whom we have seen may appear to all the world!

(*The call to colors sounds first to the right and then to the left. See "Army Manual" for bugle calls. The American soldier of to-day steps from behind the curtain and salutes.*)

FATHER TIME. Brewster, what gave you to increase the strength of your child?

(*Brewster steps from behind the curtain right on the platform and as he does so a group of pilgrims enters the stage on the extreme right.*)

BREWSTER (*presenting Faith with a Bible which she hands to the soldier*). "WE KNOW THERE IS AN ETERNAL LAW WHICH KINGS AS WELL AS COMMONS MUST OBEY."

(*He passes to the left and stands on the left of the first step of the platform.*)

FATHER TIME. Standish, has he aught of thy spirit?

(*Standish steps out from the curtain behind the platform, to the left, and as he does so his ten soldiers enter upon the extreme left of the stage. Standish hands Freedom a sword which she gives to the soldier.*)

MILES STANDISH. "The Sword of the Righteous shall smite down the enemies of the Lord." (*He passes to the right and stands opposite Brewster.*)

FATHER TIME. Revere, does thy love of freedom and justice live within him?

(*Revere enters from the exit to the right on the platform and gives Faith spurs. As he enters a group of minute men enter the stage from the right, led by The Spirit of '76.*)

PAUL REVERE. Man is endowed by his Creator with the love and the right of freedom.

(*He passes down to the second step of the platform.*)

FATHER TIME. Does this child of the western world show true love of mankind?

(*A mother enters from the left behind the curtain and presents a helmet to Freedom, who gives it to the soldier.*)

A MOTHER. The spirit of Patrick Henry's GIVE ME

LIBERTY, OR GIVE ME DEATH has grown into a great love for the liberty of all mankind, and a willingness to sacrifice life for that liberty.

(*She passes and stands opposite Revere.*)

FATHER TIME (*to the Soldier*). What banner has blossomed from your high faith and love of Freedom?

(*America enters, carrying the Stars and Stripes.*)

AMERICAN SOLDIER. "WE FIGHT FOR THE THINGS WE HAVE ALWAYS CARRIED NEAREST TO OUR HEARTS, FOR DEMOCRACY, FOR THE RIGHT OF THOSE WHO SUBMIT TO AUTHORITY TO HAVE A VOICE IN THEIR OWN GOVERNMENT, FOR A UNIVERSAL DOMINION OF RIGHT BY SUCH A CONCERT OF FREE PEOPLE AS SHALL BRING PEACE AND SAFETY TO ALL NATIONS AND MAKE THE WORLD AT LAST FREE."

FATHER TIME. It is the voice of the people and the will of God.

(*Procession of all crafts and professions across stage to the March of Triumph from "Aida." When stage is full there is a silence and Time takes the center of the stage.*)

FATHER TIME. The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.—*Isaiah 9, 2.*

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. Give a short account of the chief events leading up to the Revolution of 1776.

2. Why were religion and politics equally the cause of emigration from Europe to the New World in the sixteenth and seven-

teenth centuries? Are they equally the cause today? Give reasons for your answer.

3. What is meant by the phrases "crop-eared Puritans," and the "divine right of kings?"

4. Why did the Pilgrims leave Holland for the New World? In what year did they reach the new country? Where did they settle?

5. Give a five-minute talk on how English came to be the national language of the United States when it was settled originally by the French, Dutch, and Spanish as well as by the English.

6. How did the white and the red man become friends? Tell how other peoples are won over in the same way today.

7. What custom established by the Pilgrims do we still commemorate?

8. Name those nations that have contributed to the cause of freedom and civilization.

9. Explain how America played an important part.

10. What did England lose through the American Revolution? What did she gain?

11. In what manner did the women perform their part nobly?

12. Why did the United States enter the Great War in 1917?

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. "Freedom of religion," "freedom of the press," "freedom of speech" are expressions we hear used constantly. Read aloud the section of the Constitution and its Amendments that guarantee these rights to the inhabitants of the United States.

2. Find in the introduction to the Declaration of Independence a much quoted phrase that states what rights each person, provided he behaves himself, enjoys.

3. Behind all historical events, there is the desire of the individual to make a better living. This is called the "Economic Basis of History." Write a composition showing that the Puritans made a better living "on the wild New England shore" than they did in Old England.

Nathan Hale

CHARACTERS

*Alice Adams	Captain Young
*George, The Tory	Furgeson
William	Butler
James	Wilson
Phœbe	Lane
*Nathan Hale	*Widow Chichester
*General Washington	Hewitt
*Colonel Knowlton	First Loyalist
Corporal Young	Second Loyalist
Captain Conrad	Lieutenant Forster
Captain Smith	*Lieutenant Hampton

Provost-Marshal Cunningham

*Leading historical characters. The parts played in this play correspond as nearly as possible to the actual contributions of the characters to history. There is no historical data to prove that "George, The Tory" actually betrayed Nathan Hale, though it is believed that he gave information leading to his capture. Before the play is read in the classroom, the authors suggest either a wall map or a blackboard sketch showing the position of the British forces on Long Island and of the American forces in New York.

ACT I

Place: Exterior of the Grammar School, New London, Connecticut.
Time: April 21, 1775. The Call to Arms.

Enter George, nicknamed "The Tory," and Alice. They carry books and slates. George tries the school door. It is locked.

ALICE (*surprised*). Locked!

GEORGE. You see, Alice, our schoolmaster is a laggard this morning.

ALICE. He is not a laggard. He is late, to be sure, but I am certain he has reasons.

Courtesy J. W. Barber

THE BIRTHPLACE OF NATHAN HALE AT COVENTRY, CONNECTICUT

GEORGE. You always champion him.

ALICE. And why should I not do so? I do hope he is not ill.

GEORGE. Suppose he were, what difference would it make to you?

ALICE. It would grieve me very much.

GEORGE. Grieve you? Why?

ALICE. Because it would.

GEORGE (*angrily*). You think he's the greatest man that ever lived.

ALICE. Well, what is that to you?

GEORGE (*more angry*). A lot. Don't I always carry your books home from school? Don't I always take you to parties and everywhere? Don't you always let me take you home from Meeting?

ALICE. Yes, but—but—

GEORGE. Then you ought to like me better than you do Nathan Hale.

ALICE. Nobody can like you much, George; you have a mean disposition and a bad temper.

(*Enter James, William, and Phœbe, all carrying books. They hear Alice's last words.*)

WILLIAM. I can vouch for his mean disposition. Last week I broke the store window. George ran into the store as fast as he could to tell the storekeeper about it. He didn't give me a chance to confess it.

JAMES. Telling on people is a bad habit to get into, George. If you still do it when you grow to be a man, people will despise you.

ALICE. That is true.

GEORGE (*angrily*). What do I care?

ALICE. How sweetly you say that!

JAMES. Why do the boys call you "The Tory," George?

(*George does not answer but turns his back upon the others.*)

PHŒBE. Why don't we go into school?

ALICE. We can't. The door is locked.

ALL. Locked! Why?

ALICE. Mr. Hale has not come yet.

ALL. How strange!

PHŒBE. He has never been late before!

WILLIAM. There must be something wrong!

ALICE. Do you think he is ill?

JAMES. I don't think so. Father said the schoolmaster made a wonderful speech for freedom at the store last night. He said, "Let us march at once, and never lay down our arms until we have attained our independence."

© Boston Photo News Co.

WHERE NATHAN HALE TAUGHT SCHOOL AT NEW LONDON, CONNECTICUT

PHŒBE. He is a very patriotic man.

ALICE. And brave, too.

WILLIAM. And the best and kindest teacher for miles around

JAMES. Here he comes.

PHŒBE. How rapidly he walks.

(*Enter Hale.*)

HALE. Good morning, my dear pupils.

ALL. Good morning, Mr. Hale.

HALE. I am sorry to have kept you waiting, but as I am going away this morning, I had many things to attend to.

ALL. Going away!

HALE. Alas, I do not wish to leave my pupils, but my country calls me to fight for her.

ALL. To fight?

HALE. Have you not heard of the bloodshed at Lexington?

ALL. No! When?

HALE. Only two days ago, but the news is spreading like a fire all over the country. The farmers near Boston were aroused by the actions of the British soldiers and collected in the town of Lexington with their guns. The British under Major Pitcairn marched upon them. "Disperse, ye rebels!" shouted Pitcairn. The Colonists would do no such thing. Shots were fired and blood was shed. Ten of our patriots were slain and several were wounded. This means war! Men everywhere are leaving their work and joining companies to fight the British. I am going, too!

WILLIAM. Hurrah! I am going to fight for my country the day I am sixteen!

JAMES. And I, too.

HALE. Bravely spoken.

PHŒBE. Then you won't teach us any more?

HALE. No. I have come to say good-bye.

(*George starts to go away.*)

HALE. Where are you going, George?

GEORGE (*sullenly*). I am going home.

HALE. Wait a minute. I want to say good-bye to all of you.

GEORGE. I don't want to shake hands with you.

(*Exit George sullenly. All look surprised.*)

HALE. What is the matter with George?

WILLIAM. You mustn't mind him, Mr. Hale. He has a sulky fit on.

HALE. Oh, is that it? Well, I am sorry he feels that way, but he will get over it. And now I must leave you. Good-bye William! Good-bye James! I

shall expect to see you brave soldiers and perhaps generals in a few years. (*He shakes hands with the boys.*) And you, Phœbe. I shall expect you to know the multiplication tables thoroughly when I return.

PHŒBE. Good-bye, Mr. Hale. We wish you the best success and—

JAMES. That you will come back soon. Good-bye!

ALICE. It grieves me to see you go, Nathan, but I know our country needs you.

JAMES. When the war is over, will you return and be our schoolmaster?

HALE. I hope so, James. And now as I have many preparations to make, I must hurry. I will walk back to the village with you.

(*Exeunt James, Phœbe, and William, followed by Hale and Alice.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Washington's Headquarters at the Murray Mansion, New York.
Time: September, 1776. The Mission.

General Washington is standing with his back to the audience, studying a large wall map. An orderly stands at attention at the door on the right. Washington paces to and fro, restless and puzzled.

WASHINGTON. Orderly, request Colonel Knowlton to come here at once.

(*Orderly salutes and withdraws. Washington continues to pace to and fro, stopping now and then to*

examine the wall map. Enter Colonel Knowlton. Washington does not see Knowlton.)

KNOWLTON. Did you wish to see me, General?

WASHINGTON. Ah, good morning, Colonel Knowlton. I have a very serious and perplexing problem to solve: What will the British do next?

KNOWLTON. That is what we all want to know, General Washington.

WASHINGTON. It is what we must in some way find out. I have been studying this plan here. (*He indicates the map.*) And I can see at a glance that the British can attack us from three different points. Now we must be ready for them. Therefore we must find out their plans.

KNOWLTON. But how?

WASHINGTON. We must send a spy into their camp.

KNOWLTON. That seems to be the only way.

WASHINGTON. It is the only way. I sent for you, Colonel Knowlton, to ask you to assemble all the officers here at once. We will talk it over and see who will undertake the work of securing the information we want.

KNOWLTON. I will call them together at once.

(*Knowlton salutes and exits to the right. Washington continues studying the wall map. There is a sound of an approaching horseman. A cavalryman enters.*)

WASHINGTON. What tidings, Corporal?

CORPORAL YOUNG (*saluting*). I have been on guard at the river, General, for the last six hours. For the first three hours I could see plainly across to Brooklyn. All is quiet on Long Island. The British on the Heights are still in camp. Directly opposite,

at Wallabout Inlet, two sentinels are on watch. Then a mist settled over the water and hid the opposite shore.

WASHINGTON. Very good, Corporal. That is all.

(*Corporal Young salutes and withdraws. Enter Colonel Knowlton, followed by Captain Conrad, Captain Smith, Captain Young, and six other officers.*)

WASHINGTON. Pray be seated, gentlemen. Our business may take some time.

(*Washington and Knowlton sit at a table, and the other officers sit in a row opposite them.*)

WASHINGTON. I have assembled you, gentlemen, to discuss a very perplexing problem with the hope that we can find a solution. I will briefly explain the situation. (*Washington goes to the wall map.*) Now, here is our position, gentlemen, and across the river are the British. They are scattered all along the water front of Brooklyn. It is possible for them to attack us from three different points. They could cross to the lowest point of New York, march north and attack us from the south.

KNOWLTON. In that case we would have to stretch a line of defense entirely across New York from the Hudson to the East River.

CAPTAIN CONRAD. That would be an easy way to meet them in battle.

WASHINGTON. Not at all. We must keep our forces away from the shores, for there we would be exposed to cannon fire from their warships in both rivers. And secondly, they may attack us from the East. They would cross to Buchanan's and Montresser's islands without danger from our guns. From

there they could very quickly land at Kip's bay and without much trouble divide our forces. That would be a night attack probably.

CAPTAIN SMITH. We could not prevent their landing. They seem to have twice as many soldiers.

COLONEL KNOWLTON. And also the British have a far better military equipment.

WASHINGTON. Then there is a third method of attack they might adopt. They may decide to cross the sound and march upon New York from the North.

KNOWLTON. In that case if we were defeated in the engagement we would be caught like rats in a trap.

WASHINGTON. Now, gentlemen, we might be able to meet them if we knew from what point to expect them and just how strong their force. There is but one thing to be done.

OFFICERS. And that, sir?

WASHINGTON. To find out their plans.

OFFICERS. That is true, but how?

WASHINGTON. We must send a spy into the British camp.

OFFICERS. A spy!

WASHINGTON. It is the only way.

KNOWLTON (*rising and addressing the officers*). Gentlemen, I trust you all realize that our army is in a most critical position. You all understand what defeat of our forces would mean to us! To our cause and to the whole nation! It would mean the end of the conflict.

(*Enter Nathan Hale unseen by those in the room.*)

Gentlemen, it is absolutely necessary to send a spy into the enemies' camp to endeavor to find out their plans. Gentlemen, we call for volunteers!

CAPTAIN SMITH. Colonel Knowlton, we realize the necessity, but I, personally, feel that such a duty should be assigned to us by our wise general.

CAPTAIN YOUNG. I am no coward. I stood my ground at Concord and I am not afraid of the enemies' bullets, sir. I would suggest that we draw lots. The duty of a spy is hardly honorable.

OFFICERS. Hardly!

HALE (*stepping forward*). It is honorable. "EVERY KIND OF SERVICE NECESSARY TO THE PUBLIC GOOD BECOMES HONORABLE BY BEING NECESSARY." If the exigencies of my country demand a peculiar service, its claims in the performance of that service are imperious.

CAPTAIN SMITH. Not when it comes to being a spy.

CAPTAIN YOUNG. Captain Smith is right. It is not exactly fitting for an officer to be a spy. I would rather either be assigned to the duty by General Washington, or draw lots.

WASHINGTON. I realize how you feel about the duty. For that reason I should prefer a volunteer.

HALE. I will undertake it.

(*All turn and look at Hale.*)

OFFICERS. No, Hale, let us draw lots.

HALE. "I THINK I OWE TO MY COUNTRY THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF AN OBJECT SO IMPORTANT AND SO MUCH DESIRED BY THE COMMANDER OF THE ARMIES. YET I AM NOT INFLUENCED BY THE EXPECTATION OF PROMOTION OR PECUNIARY REWARD."

CAPTAIN SMITH. But why you?

HALE. "I DESIRE TO BE USEFUL."

WASHINGTON. Gentlemen, you may go.

(*Exeunt all officers except Washington, Knowlton, and Hale. At the door Captain Conrad turns and speaks to Hale. Washington sits at the table and writes.*)

CONRAD. See here, Hale, you are too good a man to act as a spy.

HALE. Not at all. "MY ONLY CONCERN IS THAT I MIGHT NOT PROVE GOOD ENOUGH."

(*Exit Captain Conrad.*)

KNOWLTON. Captain Hale, you are about to venture upon a noble, and at the same time, an extremely precarious undertaking. Have you counted the cost if detected?

HALE. "I AM FULLY SENSIBLE OF THE CONSEQUENCES OF DISCOVERY IN SUCH A SITUATION."

KNOWLTON. I am proud that you are one of Knowlton's Rangers, Hale. General Washington, here is a man who knows no fear, and will serve his country in the face of death itself. Good-bye, Captain Hale. (*Knowlton shakes hands with Hale and exits.*)

WASHINGTON (*standing up and folding paper*). How do you propose to enter the British lines, Captain Hale?

HALE. I will cross the Sound from Connecticut, sir, to the north shore of Long Island and enter the British camp from the East. I will disguise myself as a schoolmaster. I can play that rôle, for I was a schoolmaster before my country called me, sir.

WASHINGTON. Your plan is excellent. Here is a pass that will enable you to go through our lines, and

will secure you the use of any of our ships. My good wishes. Good-bye, Captain Hale, and God bless you!

HALE. Good-bye, General Washington, I will do my best.

WASHINGTON. I am sure you will.

(*They shake hands and Hale exits to the right.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: The British Fortifications at Brooklyn.
Time: Ten Days Later. The Spy.

Four British soldiers are gathered around the camp fire.

FURGESON. Well, boys, what will be General Howe's next move?

BUTLER. Yes, what?

WILSON. I would give a week's rations to know.

LANE. Oh, would you? Then hand your rations to me. I know.

ALL. You do? Tell us!

LANE. Gather round me, so. (*The others gather round Lane.*) He is going—he—yes, he is going very soon to . . .

ALL. Out with it!

LANE (*impressively*). He is going to jump upon that rebel Washington across the river!

ALL (*disappointed*). Oh, really! We all know that!

FURGESON. But how? Where? When?

LANE. I say, here comes the schoolmaster! Fine fellow he.

WILSON. Too bad he isn't a soldier. He would make a good one. But to come back to our discussion—how, when, and where will Howe attack the rebels in New York?

(*Enter Hale reading a book.*)

LANE. Why?

WILSON. Because I want some excitement for one thing, and because the Long Island farmers are getting stingy with their supplies.

HALE (*looking up and quickly hiding a paper in his book*). Do you expect to fare better in New York?

WILSON. I do hope so. I am half starved here.

LANE. Hello, schoolmaster! Which is it, Greek or Latin today?

HALE. Greek. I have a good chance to study Greek now. I am out of work.

BUTLER. How is it you never cared to be a soldier?

LANE. I know that too.

ALL. Harken to the man who knows everything!

LANE. Why the schoolmaster asked for Washington's place, and when Congress would not so honor him, he went off in a huff, and would not fight at all.

HALE. Oh dear, no! War is so dreadful!

FURGESON. I am afraid you are not very brave, schoolmaster.

WILSON. However, perhaps he is learned. If you can tell us just how our General will attack the rebels, I will share my supper with you.

LANE. General Howe is the only one who knows that!

HALE. And one other—I.

ALL. You? Tell us!

HALE. That is an easy question if you will give me three guesses. First guess—Go across the ferry to the southern point of New York and attack the American forces from the South. Second guess—Go across the Sound and attack from the North. Third guess—Go straight across to Kips Bay and attack from the East.

BUTLER (*suspiciously*). I thought you did not care for war.

LANE. Say, schoolmaster, you are not a fool. Tell us which of the three ways would be best.

WILSON. The first, of course.

FURGESON. Not at all. I say the second.

HALE. You are both wrong. It is the third.

ALL. Why?

HALE. Because then the fighting would be in range of the big guns on your vessels. You see you could use your fleet to the best advantage.

LANE. I will wager that is just what General Howe will do. Say, schoolmaster, you are clever!

BUTLER. Too clever. I thought you were interested in nothing but books.

HALE. Oh, but this war is just like a book I am reading. (*Holds up the book.*) This tells about the Siege of Troy. Just let me take you back six or seven hundred years B.C. . . .

WILSON. You may if they had plenty to eat in those days.

HALE. Six hundred years B.C. you must imagine that this is not Long Island, but that we are in Asia. We are . . .

FURGESON. Say, do you mind dropping me off at England?

HALE. We are camping around the walls of Troy. You are all Greeks. . . .

LANE. No, thank you, schoolmaster. I couldn't be anything but English even to please you.

HALE. You are all Greeks. Let us imagine that the American forces are Trojans, that New York is Troy, and that the East River is the wall around Troy. The Greeks are camping around the walls, waiting for a chance to enter the city. Now see how interesting this is to me who loves to study . . .

BUTLER Wait a minute, schoolmaster. How long did the Greeks camp around the walls of Troy?

HALE. Only ten years. Then . . .

(*All laugh.*)

BUTLER. Only ten years! Say, schoolmaster, time does not count with you. You are all right, though, even if you are a scholar. You know, for a minute I was afraid you might be a spy.

HALE. Indeed! And get hanged! What a dreadful end!

LANE. Exactly. Only you are wrong about one thing, schoolmaster. We won't stay here ten years. In a month we capture the rebels, end the war, and sail back to Merry England!

ALL. Aye, back to Merry England! Back to Merry England!

(*All sing a patriotic song of England while Hale watches them. Other soldiers off the stage join the song. Hale takes a piece of paper from his book and slips it into his boot. Then satisfying himself that he is not being watched, leaves the company.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: The Chichester Inn near Huntington, Long Island.
Time: Ten Days Later. The Capture.

Enter Widow Chichester, carrying dishes which she arranges upon one of the tables.

WIDOW CHICHESTER. These soldiers are the poorest men to pay me their bills. They have been loitering round my inn now for two weeks and eating up my good food. Even if I am loyal to the King I don't want to be eaten out of house and home.

(*Enter George. He looks around expectantly and seems disappointed that he does not see the one he is looking for.*)

WIDOW CHICHESTER. What can I do for you today, young man?

GEORGE. You can get me a good meal. I came all the way from New London, Connecticut, and I am hungry.

WIDOW CHICHESTER. And what might your business be?

GEORGE. Never mind my business. Your's is to supply me with food. Are you going to get it?

WIDOW CHICHESTER. That depends upon whether you have money to pay for it or not.

GEORGE (*throwing some gold coins upon the table*). Oh! I have money enough and to spare. Get the food.

(*Exit Widow Chichester. Enter Hewitt, Long Island farmer. He carries a wagon whip and is very dusty.*)

HEWITT. How-de-do, stranger?

GEORGE (*aside*). I had better be civil to him. He may be able to give me the information I seek about Hale. (*To Hewitt.*) Well, thank you. How are you?

HEWITT. Middlin', fair to middlin', thank you.

GEORGE. Won't you sit down and dine with me?

HEWITT. I don't mind if I do. I have ridden all day and I am hungry.

(*Enter Widow Chichester. She places the food upon the table.*)

WIDOW CHICHESTER. If it is all the same to you, stranger, I would like to have you pay for the food before you eat it. Four shillings, please.

(*George pays the money and Widow Chichester withdraws to one of the other tables.*)

GEORGE. From where did you come?

HEWITT. From Flatbush.

GEORGE. But the British soldiers are there.

HEWITT. They were all on the way to New York. No, they did not stop me, except to steal apples from my wagon.

GEORGE. Did you happen to pass a tall young man on the road anywhere?

HEWITT. How was he dressed?

GEORGE. Just like a schoolmaster. He wore glasses and carried a book.

HEWITT. I guess I did see him.

THE CHICHESTER INN, NEAR HUNTINGTON, LONG ISLAND

GEORGE. Where?

HEWITT. Miles back on the Jamaica road.

GEORGE. Was he coming this way?

HEWITT. He was sitting on a log. He did not tell me which way, though I asked him.

(*Enter two loyalists. They sit at a table.*)

WIDOW CHICHESTER. What will serve you, sirs?

FIRST LOYALIST. Food and drink.

SECOND LOYALIST. And, mind you, nothing expensive.

(*Exit Widow Chichester to the left.*)

FIRST LOYALIST. I am glad the British soldiers have gone to New York.

SECOND LOYALIST. Why?

(*Enter Widow Chichester. She places the food upon the table and arranges the dishes.*)

FIRST LOYALIST. I am glad they have gone because they have eaten me out of house and home. They are the biggest eaters I have ever seen. (*Enter two British soldiers, Lieutenants Hampton and Forster.*) Although I am in sympathy with the King and loyal to England, I can't say that it gives me much pleasure to feed and shelter his Majesty's soldiers.

FORSTER. What's that you say about his Majesty's soldiers?

FIRST LOYALIST. Er-I-er-I-er—said that it—er-er—always gives me pleasure to feed and shelter his Majesty's soldiers.

HAMPTON. At present we do not need your shelter, but we can give you the pleasure of feeding us. Four dinners, Widow Chichester.

FORSTER. Four of your best dinners, Widow Chichester.

WIDOW CHICHESTER. That will be twelve shillings. (*First Loyalist looks angry.*) I said twelve shillings, sir. (*The First Loyalist reluctantly pays over the money.*) You are lucky, Mr. Soldiers, for he is the stingiest man on Long Island. (*Exit Widow Chichester. Soldiers laugh and sit at the table.*)

HAMPTON. It is so good of you, friend Loyalist, to treat us to this farewell dinner, this expensive farewell dinner.

FORSTER. Our general has sent for us to join him in New York to-night, so it is very meet and fitting that you not only dine us, but also wine us, friend Loyalist.

HAMPTON (*raising his voice*). Wine, Widow Chichester, your oldest and most expensive port.

WIDOW CHICHESTER (*off stage*). That will be twelve shillings more.

HAMPTON (*to the First Loyalist*). Did you hear the price, sir, twelve shillings more?

(*The Second Loyalist snickers, much to the annoyance of the First Loyalist, who grudgingly hands out another twelve shillings. Enter Hale. He carries a book in his hand and, sitting at a table, begins to read it.*)

FORSTER. I say, who is that man?

SECOND LOYALIST. I do not know him.

FIRST LOYALIST (*sulkily*). I've never seen him before.

(*George walks over to Hampton and whispers something to him. Then George exits.*)

HAMPTON. I must find out if he is for the King.

(*Hampton stands up and removes his hat. He whispers to Forster who exits watching Hale closely.*)

HAMPTON. Attention all! A pledge! To our King! (*All rise to their feet except Hale.*) Long live the King! Long live the King! (*Hale continues to read his book.*)

HAMPTON. Stand up, schoolmaster, and pledge your loyalty to the King!

HALE. Are you addressing me, sir?

HAMPTON. Yes. Rise and pledge your loyalty to the King.

HALE. What king?

HAMPTON. George the Third, King of England and of these Colonies.

HALE. You must excuse me, sir, I do not know him.

HAMPTON. What? Whig! Rebel! Traitor! I will make you eat those words. (*He draws his sword and*

advances toward Hale threateningly. Enter Widow Chichester who stands between them.)

WIDOW CHICHESTER. A ship approaches! It carries soldiers!

HAMPTON. A ship? Where?

WIDOW CHICHESTER. From the Sound. See yonder!

(*Forster turns to gaze through the window. Hale, mistaking it for the ship to carry him back to the American lines, grasps his hat and exits as all the others look through the window at the ship.*)

FORSTER. What ship is that? It is not familiar.

WIDOW CHICHESTER. Sir, that Whig has left the room.

HAMPTON. He needs watching. I'll go after him.

(*Enter George.*)

GEORGE. You need not bother. He cannot escape.

HAMPTON. See, he is running toward the shore.

GEORGE. He cannot escape. That ship is the Guardship Halifax, and the soldiers in that ship are British under Captain Quarne.

HAMPTON. See how he runs! Ah, he stops!

GEORGE. He sees his mistake! He thought it was an American ship.

HAMPTON. He's making for the woods. They shoot at him. Ha! Lieutenant Forster is after him! They are closing in on him! They've got him!

GEORGE. They're bringing him here. I set that trap for him.

HAMPTON. You set the trap? And why?

GEORGE. Because he is a spy. He is Nathan Hale.

(*Enter Hale held by Forster and another English soldier.*)

HAMPTON. This man is an American spy. His name is Nathan Hale. We will take him to New York to-night.

GEORGE (*facing Hale*). Search him!

(*Hale gazes at George and gives a start of surprise.*)

HALE. You, George?

GEORGE. Search him. He is a spy of Washington. (*They proceed to search Hale and find nothing.*)

HAMPTON. Off with your shoes. Off with your shoes, I say. (*British soldiers remove Hale's shoes and find the papers.*)

HAMPTON. So the schoolmaster is a spy! We caught him just in time.

[*Curtain*]

ACT V

Place: A Prison Tent in New York.
Time: September 22, 1776. The Last Hour.

Hale sits at the table writing. Lane stands at one side of the door on guard and Wilson on the other. Hampton stands looking through the window.

HALE (*standing up*). I thank you, Lieutenant Hampton, for your kindness in procuring me the writing materials as well as permission to write these farewell letters to my relatives and friends.

HAMPTON. It was nothing. You should have received better treatment.

HALE. The hour is at hand, and I am ready.

(*Enter Cunningham.*)

CUNNINGHAM. What is this? Writing letters? This shall not be allowed.

© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

THE EXECUTION OF NATHAN HALE
A monument has since been erected on the site of his execution in City Hall Park, New York City.

HAMPTON. I gave him permission.

CUNNINGHAM. I shall not allow it. (*He seizes the letters.*)

HAMPTON. But why?

CUNNINGHAM. "THE REBELS SHALL NEVER KNOW THAT ONE OF THEIR KIND CAN DIE SO BRAVELY."

(*He tears up the letters that Hale had written and throws the pieces upon the floor.*)

HAMPTON. Cunningham, you are a brute!

CUNNINGHAM. Are you ready, you spy?

HALE (*calmly*). I am ready.

(*Hale marches out between Lane and Cunningham.*)

HAMPTON. It is a disgrace to our country that he had no trial. See how bravely he walks to his doom!

Without fear, without flinching, without trembling, with a strong and steady step.

WILSON. He is a martyr, sir.

HAMPTON. See how calmly he faces the crowds! He is every inch a soldier. "IF THIS BE THE SPIRIT OF THE AMERICAN REBELS THEN WE SHALL NEVER CONQUER THEM."

WILSON. Ah! he speaks, sir.

HALE (*off stage*). "I ONLY REGRET THAT I HAVE BUT ONE LIFE TO GIVE TO MY COUNTRY."

[*Curtain*]

NATHAN HALE

To drum-beat and heart-beat,
A soldier marches by;
There is color in his cheek,
There is courage in his eye,
Yet to drum-beat and heart-beat
In a moment he must die.

By starlight and moonlight
He seeks the Briton's camp;
He hears the rustling flag,
And the armed sentry's tramp;
And the starlight and moonlight
His silent wanderings lamp.

With slow tread and still tread
He scans the tented line;
And he counts the battery guns
By the gaunt and shadowy pine;
And his slow tread and still tread
Gives no warning sign.

The dark wave, the plumed wave,
It meets his eager glance;
And it sparkles 'neath the stars,
Like the glimmer of a lance—
A dark wave, a plumed wave,
On an emerald expanse.

A sharp clang, a steel clang,
And terror in the sound!
For the sentry, falcon-eyed,
In the camp a spy hath found;
With a sharp clang, a steel clang,
The patriot is bound.

With calm brow, steady brow,
He listens to his doom;
In his look there is no fear,
Nor a shadow-trace of gloom;
But with calm brow and steady brow
He robes him for the tomb.

In the long night, the still night,
He kneels upon the sod;
And the brutal guards withhold
E'en the solemn Word of God!
In the long night, the still night,
He walks where Christ hath trod.

'Neath the blue morn, the sunny morn,
He dies upon the tree;
And he mourns that he can lose
But one life for Liberty;
And in the blue morn, the sunny morn,
His spirit wings are free.

But his last words, his message-words
They burn, lest friendly eye
Should read how proud and calm
A patriot could die,
With his last words, his dying words,
A soldier's battle-cry.

From the Fame-leaf and Angel-leaf,
From monument and urn,
The sad of earth, the glad of heaven,
His tragic fate shall learn;
And on Fame-leaf and Angel-leaf
The name of HALE shall burn.

—*Francis Miles Finch.*

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What does Act One tell of the affection in which Nathan Hale was held by his pupils.

2. After reading Nathan Hale's brief description of the Battle of Lexington in Act One write:

a. A description of the battle from the point of view of an American soldier participating in the conflict.

b. A description of the battle from the point of view of an eye witness.

c. A description of the battle from the point of view of an English soldier slightly wounded and taken prisoner.

3. Why were the officers of Washington's army loth to accept the duties of a spy? Was it the fear of the consequences if they were caught? Explain.

4. Give the stories of any other spies, of which you may have read.

5. How does Hale show himself to be a true patriot?

6. What disguise did Hale adopt? Why that particular one?

7. In what way does the scene at the Chichester Inn throw light upon the conditions of the times?

8. Give your opinion of the treatment which Hale was subjected to.

9. After reading Nathan Hale's lines printed in large type does he seem to you to be an educated man? What are your reasons?

10. Does the poem do justice to Nathan Hale? Why?

11. On the site of Hale's capture, near Huntington, Long Island, a monument has been erected within one hundred feet of the Long Island Sound. The settlement near this monument is called Halesite. What inscription do you think may be written upon this monument?

12. A statue has also been erected on the site of Hale's execution in City Hall Park, New York. Write what you consider would be a suitable inscription for the statue. Compare it with what is inscribed on the monument.

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. From Hale's description of the Battle of Lexington write the lines that may have been spoken during the battle and make a play of one scene.

2. Make a sketch of Long Island and show the position of the American army. Of the English army. Of the English ships.

3. Write the letter you think Nathan Hale may have written to his father before it was destroyed by Cunningham.

4. Compose a letter which you think might have been written to Nathan Hale's pupils mentioned in Act One, telling them how bravely he went to his death.

When Old New York Was Young

CHARACTERS

Ann	Dirck	First Pirate
Cornelia	Joris	Second Pirate
Puck	First Girl	*W. Beekman
Fairy	Second Girl	*Kip
Witch	Boy	*Martin Crieger
Green Fairy	Watchman	*Corlear
Blue Fairy	Secretary	Old Woman
Yellow Fairy	Clergyman	First Gentleman
Cirbekua	*DeSille	Second Gentleman
Annecke	Grietje Reiners	

*Leading historical characters.

Scene I

The Road to Long Ago and Far Away

Two small girls sitting at Midsummer Eve on a bench in the park studying history. They beat their breasts and gabble. "1609, Hudson discovered the river which bears his name. 1623, First Dutch settlement made."

Ann (*shutting her book*). I don't care if it was. I want to go and play. Don't you?

Cornelia. Yes, but the examinations, you know! We've just got to graduate.

Ann (*drawing a long sigh and opening her book*). History's so long, and it's about dead people. Sometimes I think they never were alive any more than fairies and witches.

(*A small brown figure appears.*)

PUCK. What's that? What's that? Fairies and witches all dead? They (*pointing an accusing finger at the two surprised girls*) say we're all dead or not real! (*As he says "real" a small green fairy appears.*)

FAIRY. Not real? (*A blue fairy dashes out from behind a rosebush. A yellow fairy appears. A witch appears.*)

WITCH. Who said I wasn't real? I'll show them! (*The two girls scream and clutch each other while the fairies, Puck, and witch dance around them shouting.*)

Blind eye, deaf ear,
Can't see, won't hear!

(*They whirl madly around until Ann who has gradually recovered from her fright stops them.*)

ANN. Stop, stop! (*The dancers stop suddenly.*) You say you are fairies. (*Nodding at the fairies and at Puck.*) You look like a witch, but none of you has done anything to show you have magic power, and—

CORNELIA (*who has taken courage*). My teacher says "Actions speak louder than words."

WITCH (*in towering rage*). I'll show you some actions. I'll turn you into a toad.

FAIRIES. Or a beetle.

ANN (*suddenly catching sight of her history which she had dropped when Puck appeared*). I shouldn't much care if I were turned into a toad. I could just hop around then—I wouldn't need to learn any dates and pass examinations.

FAIRIES AND PUCK. They must be awful.

WITCH. Examinations are enough to spoil anybody's disposition, and, of course, only good girls believe in us.

PUCK (*turning to the two girls*). Suppose we make a bargain. (*Turning to the witch and the fairies.*) And this garden does not need any more toads and beetles. (*The fairies and the witch nod their heads vigorously. Puck turns back to the girls.*) If we weave a magic that will make you pass your examinations, will you promise to believe in us? (*Very confidentially.*) You see, if people do not believe in us, we disappear, and the land in which there are no elves and witches is a very dreary place for children. Already, many of us have left this island because people no more believe in us. You know if you don't believe in a thing, it doesn't exist.

CORNELIA (*looking puzzled*). I don't understand.

WITCH. He means that ideas become real only when you believe in them.

ANN. What do you mean?

GREEN FAIRY (*picking up a bit of sewing from the bench*). What is this? (*She drops it.*)

ANN. O! Be careful—that's the middy blouse I'm making to wear to the graduating exercises.

GREEN FAIRY. If you didn't believe in graduating exercises, there wouldn't be any, would there?

BLUE FAIRY. If you didn't believe in politeness, there would be only rude people in the world.

YELLOW FAIRY. If you didn't believe in kindness, everyone would be cruel, wouldn't they?

CORNELIA (*clapping her hands*). I see. What people believe in, they make come true.

(*Witch, fairies, and Puck nod their heads vigorously.*)

PUCK. Yes, that's the idea. Because your history people believed in democracy, they made this country what it is. You see us, so you believe in us.

ANN. Yes?

PUCK. Now we'll make a magic that'll show you just how real the characters in your history were. It's Midsummer Eve. We can take you along the Road of Years to the Land of Long Ago. (*Turning to the witch.*) Put on their heads the crown of imagination. (*The witch takes from her bag two golden circlets and puts one on the head of each girl.*)

PUCK. Now, let us start on our journey to see how people lived when Old New York Was Young!

[*Curtain*]

SCENE II

Place: The Lower End of Broadway which Runs into Bowling Green.
Time: Late Afternoon on a Sunday During the Rule of Peter Stuyvesant in the New Netherlands.

CIRBEKUA. Let us be getting home—I am hungry. It must be near time for supper. Service must be over.

ANNECKE. We're to have some of the new drink, caffee, with our supper. My father says it's bitter, but good.

CORNELIA. Not so good as chocolate—Ummmm! (*Smacking her lips.*)

ANNECKE. Chocolates and oleokes. I wish my mother would let us eat them for every meal, but

for breakfast, cornmeal mush stewed with apples and thin beer is toothsome. Do you like green leaves soaked in oil such as the French eat?

(*Two boys appear, coming from the opposite direction.*)

CORNELIA. Stop your chattering about food, Annecke. Dirck, how like you the new schoolmaster?

DIRCK. He hath a ready hand with the switch, hath he not, Joris?

JORIS (*rubbing his back*). That he hath. You girls are lucky. No tiresome school.

ANNECKE. Thou art a blockhead at books, brother. The two beaver skins our father pays for thy schooling would better be made into a tippet for me.

JORIS. My fingers will not hold a pen. They itch for a gun and rod. I love to hunt and fish.

CORNELIA (*laughing*). Why dost thou not hunt the wolf which carried off the Governor's sheep?

ANNECKE. Or the wildcat that dragged off the Widow Van Brohm's fat goose. My father says that the Governor hath offered a big bounty to anyone who will bring in the skin of a wolf or a wildcat.

(*Two small girls and one small boy approach the other group entering from the left. They are quarreling violently.*)

FIRST GIRL. It is not! . . . I say it is not!

SECOND GIRL. 'Tis so. You're a fibber.

(*The four older children pass out at the right.*)

BOY. Quit your quarreling and let's play.

(*A small girl and boy come in from the left shouting "Ja-An."*)

FIRST GIRL. Rath—a! Come and pla—ay! (*The groups join.*) Let's play "beggars." (*Small girl and*

boy take hands and the other three march under their raised arms as in "London Bridge" shouting as they march.)

Hark, hark, the dogs do bark,
The beggars have come to town;
Some in rags and some in tags
And some in velvet gowns.

(*The one who is caught gives a shriek which the others echo. As they have been dancing the watchman approaches unnoticed. As the last child is caught, the group sees the watchman and starts to run to the left. The watchman goes after them shouting.*)

WATCHMAN. Stop! Stop!

(*All but one of the children get away. One small boy is caught. He begins to bawl.*) Stop your disturbance.

BOY. Oh, please, please, it wasn't I.

WATCHMAN. You know the law. Give me thy cap. (*Boy cries louder.*) For that last roar I will also take thy jerkin. (*The boy begins to unlace his jerkin sniffling the while.*) You will come with thy father before the magistrates tomorrow and pay the fine of four guilders if you want them back.

(*He leads the small boy out.*)

DIRCK AND JORIS (*who have come up behind the watchman, and who sympathize with the small boy*). Indians, Indians! (*The watchman lets go of the small boy and starts to run.*)

WATCHMAN. The wildings. God save us!

(*The boys shout with laughter. The watchman stops and shakes his cudgel at them.*)

[*Curtain*]

SCENE III

Place: The Council Chamber.

A table, quill pens, sand shaker. The watchman comes pottering in—moves the chairs around, alters the position of the quill pens, shakes the hour glass. A secretary comes in, carrying a large book.

WATCHMAN. All must be in order for their mightinesses, the burgomasters, and schepens of the city.

© Brown Bros.

PETER STUYVESANT, THE LAST DUTCH GOVERNOR OF THE NEW NETHERLANDS

SECRETARY. 'Tis a pity his high mightiness, Peter Stuyvesant, is away after the wildings. First Councilman DeSille will judge in his stead. He is too mild with pirates and lawbreakers.

WATCHMAN. Yah. Governor Stuyvesant knows well how to deal with those wicked boys who set dogs upon me, shout "Indians," and play all manner of evil tricks when I am walking my rounds and guarding the thousand souls that inhabit the city.

SECRETARY. Three cases there be this morning. Go. Get those who are to appear. (*A bell rings. From the left hand side the watchman brings in a small boy, Annecke, a very fat, red-faced woman, and two*

pirates in chains. The fat woman smiles at the pirates who stare back; one starts to speak to his companion; the small boy sniffles occasionally. The Secretary raps the table and orders "Silence." He glares at the prisoners. The small boy hides his face in Annecke's dress. The fat woman flounces and bridles.)
Their High Mightinesses, the Burgomasters and Schepens of New Amsterdam.

(*The watchman enters carrying a large cushion which he puts into the chair occupied by DeSille who sits in the middle. The other burgomasters and schepens arrange themselves standing by their chairs. The clergyman comes forward. All remove their hats. The clergyman prays.*)

CLERGYMAN. We beseech thee, oh Lord, let thy law be a light unto our feet and a lamp unto our path. Let all respect of persons be far removed from us that we may reward justice unto rich and poor, unto friends and foes alike. To residents and strangers according to the law of truth; in all things looking up to Thee for Thy word and direction. Amen.

(*All sit.*)

DESILLE. Mister Secretary, which is the first case?

SECRETARY. John Bayard, who was caught running and shouting before the second preaching.

(*Annecke and her small brother step forward from the group of prisoners, the boy sniffling, sobbing, and rubbing his eyes. Annecke courtesies and shoves her brother to remind him to make a bow, which he does.*)

WATCHMAN. In proof of the offence, your High Mightiness, I have here his jerkin and cap. His conduct was outrageous and unseemly.

DESILLE (*looking sternly at the small boy*). So you have disobeyed the law and have brought disgrace upon this city and upon thy father's good name. It is well for thee that he is away at Fort Orange with our most worshipful Governor putting down the Indian rebellion. Else would he have given to thee a beating such as would have taught thee greater decency and behavior. (*DeSille turns to Annecke who lays down the four coins.*) Next case. (*The fat woman comes up defiantly.*) Grietje Reiners! Thou hast been condemned for thy slanderous words concerning a good and virtuous woman of this town, to appear before the Council and retract thy false statements. We listen while thou carry out the order of the Court.

(*The fat woman looks obstinately sullen for a minute; then she recites.*)

GRIETJE REINERS. I, Grietje Reiners, declare that the Frou Bogardus be a virtuous and pious woman. (*She stops.*)

DESILLE. Go on, lest thou hast to pay a fine. Thou hast lied about her. See that thou be not brought here again, or 'twill be the ducking stool for thee.

(*Fat woman flounces out.*)

DESILLE (*looking toward the pirates*). Whence came these two ugly fellows?

SECRETARY. They be pickaroons, captured last night in the marshes.

DESILLE (*turning to the two pirates*). What have you to say for yourselves?

FIRST PIRATE. We be honest traders.

SECOND PIRATE. Dutch traders.

DESILLE. Then your looks belie you, for you seem neither honest nor Dutch. Thy speech savors much of the English tongue. However, we will hear thy case this day week. (*Turning to the watchman.*) Let them be kept in a safe place. Lock them up in the Stad House jail.

WATCHMAN (*shaking his head*). Impossible, Mynheer. The jail is full of cheeses.

DESILLE. The jail is full of cheeses? Well, what sort of business is this? (*The watchman interrupts.*)

WATCHMAN. Good business, your worship. Cheeses bring good rent. Prisoners cost the city money.

W. BEEKMAN. Lock them up in the guard room of the Fort.

WATCHMAN (*rubbing his chin thoughtfully*). The guard room is full of pickle tubs.

KIP. The guard room full of pickle tubs! Whose pickle tubs?

WATCHMAN. John Heck's, I think.

DESILLE. A pest upon John Heck. Is the province a warehouse for green cheeses and pickle tubs?

MARTIN CRIEGER. A sweet pickle we would be in if the English were to attack us as the rumor is. Cattle and geese breaking their way through the palisade wall. Little powder in the battery, and a fort full of pickle tubs and green cheeses. Donderheids and Blitzen.

KIP. Where did you keep the pickaroons last night?

WATCHMAN. In the loft of the windmill.

DESILLE. Return them thither.

(*Watchman goes out with the prisoners.*)

Courtesy B. J. Lossing

THE BEEKMAN MANSION, NEW YORK CITY

DESILLE. Mynheeren, the business for the day is over. 'Tis no light matter either, to administer justice in this city of a thousand souls.

KIP. 'Tis a great matter. If New Amsterdam continue to grow in commerce and people, we may sometime be as great as our mother city in Holland. There be those of all nations here. One hears the speech of a dozen different countries, and more will come.

MARTIN CRIEGER. I would we heard less English.

W. BEEKMAN. The English are fair and honest, but they, like many of the Dutch, desire real representation. However, gentlemen (*Then a bell is heard ringing*), the bell sounds. We have earned our dinner.

[*Curtain*]

SCENE IV

Place: The same, except that the English Flag has been substituted for the Dutch Flag.
Time: 1665

W. Beekman and Corlear enter.

CORLEAR. Good morrow, Neighbor Beekman.

W. BEEKMAN. Good morrow.

CORLEAR. 'Tis fine growing weather. I doubt me not that thy farm at Corlear's Hook which thou boughtest of me should be flourishing.

W. BEEKMAN. 'Tis a fine property and not too far away from town.

CORLEAR (*Jacob Kip comes from the opposite direction*). Mynheer Kip comes also to hear the proclamation read.

KIP. Good morrow, Mynheeren, how like you the change in the city government?

W. BEEKMAN. I had as leave have a King in England as an Estates General in Holland—New Amsterdam or New York. If only our trade prospers, and our liberties are not restrained, I am content.

KIP. I grieve for Peter Stuyvesant. 'Twas a bitter day for him when the English took the city.

CORLEAR. Governor Nichols seems a good and wise man. Mine ancient office as Trumpeter to the Governor hath been abolished, but, as it carried no salary, I am as well pleased to attend to a better paying business. Trade, commerce, Mynheeren, will build this city. If England, France, and Holland would stop their quarreling and give our ships a fair

chance on the seas, we might become the greatest town in America—higher even than Boston.

(*The group of men walk off to the right, as a group of girls and boys come on the left—Annecke, Cornelia, Dirck, Joris, and others.*)

ANNECKE. While we wait for the noon hour, let us dance and sing.

ALL. Yes, a song first.

(*The dance breaks off suddenly at the sound of trumpets.*)

ALL. The Governor's proclamation.

(*Groups of people come in and stand around. Governor Nichols with a guard and his secretary appears. There is some shouting. The trumpet sounds again.*)

A PROCLAMATION

WHEREAS His Majesty, by his commission under the great seal of Great Britain, has pleased to appoint me Governor General of the Province of New York, I have thought fit to issue this proclamation declaring that the future government of the city shall be administered by persons to be known by the name and style of "Mayor, Aldermen, and Sheriff," and that all inhabitants of Manhattan Island are, and shall be forever accounted, nominated, and established as one body, politic and corporate. We do, therefore, appoint:

Thomas Willet..... *Mayor.*
Thomas Delavall.....
Cloff Van Cortlandt..
Johannes Van Brugh.. } *Aldermen.*
Cornelis Van Ruyven.
John Lawrence.....
Allard Anthony..... *Sheriff.*

Given under my hand and seal at Fort James, in New York, on the 12th day of June in the year of Our Lord, 1665.

(*Signed*) Richard Nichols,

By His Excellency's Command, *Governor*!
Mathias Necholis, *Secretary*.

God Save the King!

[*Curtain*]

SCENE V

Place: A Wharf by the River.
Time: 1783. Evacuation Day.

A crowd is gathered down by the wharf, from which the British troops are embarking in small boats to go out to the ships that will take them back to England. Out of sight where the troops are, some one is playing "The Dashing White Sergeant." The sound of marching feet is heard.

CROWD (*shouting*). Lobsters! Lobsterbacks!

OLD WOMAN. Good riddance to bad rubbish!

FIRST GENTLEMAN. I'm glad to see the last of the British flag.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. There's much division of opinion in this town as to whether the Declaration of Independence was justifiable. Many are still for the King, you know.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. Don't call him "The King"—he's "just a king" now—George III.

© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

THE JUNCTION OF PEARL AND CHATHAM STREETS, NEW YORK CITY, IN EARLY DAYS

SECOND GENTLEMAN. Yes, I know, but there are plenty of Tories who still say "The King, God bless him."

OLD WOMAN (*who has been listening inquisitively*). Not Alexander Hamilton—and he has more brains than all the rest of the town put together. (*She shakes her finger at them vigorously.*) You follow Hamilton and you can't go wrong.

FIRST GENTLEMAN. I agree with you, Mistress.

SECOND GENTLEMAN. New York signed the Declaration.

CROWD. Hurrah!

OLD WOMAN. There goes the last boat. We're rid of the rascals. (*Group of boys and girls come running through, singing "Oh Dear, What Can The Matter Be?" Crowd and the children fall silent as the American flag is brought in by a group who march as they sing "Yankee Doodle."*

WHO FOLLOW THE FLAG*

Around the city's lofty piles
Of steel and stone,
The lilac veil of dusk is thrown.
Entangled full of stars of fairy light,
And the never silent heart of the city hums
To a homeward turning time before the night.
But far above, on the sky-line's broken height,
From all the towers and domes outlined
In grey and gold along the city's crest,
I see the rippling flag still take the wind
With a promise of good to come for all mankind.
O bright flag, O brave flag, O flag to lead the free!
The hand of God thy colors blent,
And Heaven to earth thy glory lent,
To shield the weak and guide the strong,
To make an end of human wrong
And draw a countless human host to follow after thee!

—*Henry Van Dyke.*

SALUTE AND PLEDGE TO THE FLAG
STAR-SPANGLED BANNER

(*Puck and the witch lead out the two girls.*)

PUCK. The magic has worked. They have been graduated.

WITCH. And now they are going to get their diplomas.

(*Puck and the witch hand out the diplomas to the graduates.*)

[*Curtain*]

*Used by the courteous permission of Charles Scribner's Sons.

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What do the fairies set out to teach to the little girls?
2. Tell any one good fairy story which you know.
3. Seeing that New York was settled by the Dutch, how does it happen to have an English name?
4. What part did the Dutch have in guaranteeing freedom of religion to the people of the United States?
5. Why did the Dutch have less trouble with the Indians than the English, French, and Spanish?
6. What interesting side lights are here thrown on New York life during the occupation of the Dutch?
7. Show how the Colonial Dutch Courts of Law differed from our modern courts.
8. What was the ducking stool? What peculiar offences were punished in this way?
9. When did the English take over New York from the Dutch? What was its old name during the Dutch occupation?
10. What changes in the government of the city took place after the English took possession?
11. What treaty was signed in the year 1783? What were the chief terms of the treaty?

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Make a list of colonies that were founded by companies for commercial profit.
2. Read to the class from the play "World Concord" a quotation from a document that is very like our Declaration of Independence.
3. Look up the meaning of the word "cosmopolitan." Show how this adjective has always been descriptive of New York City. Is this an advantage? Give reasons for your answer.
4. Show what ceremonies attended the hauling down of the English flag and the flying of the "Stars and Stripes."
5. Draw a map showing English possessions in America in 1776 and in 1783.

Benjamin Franklin

A Long Life of Public Service

CHARACTERS

George
*Benjamin Franklin
*James Franklin
*Doctor Holmes
*Deborah Read
*Mr. Read
Clergyman
*Colonel Young
*Robert Morris
First Madame
First Monsieur
Second Madame
Second Monsieur
*King Louis XVI
*General Le Coq
*Granddaughter
*Grandson

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

ACT I

Place: The printing office of James Franklin in Boston.
Time: 1718.

Benjamin Franklin, apprentice to his brother James is cleaning the printing press. A tapping is heard at the window. Benjamin opens it.

GEORGE (*looking through the window*). Are you alone, Ben?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Yes. James and Dr. Holmes are at the Coffee House. Come in. (*George jumps in through the window. He pulls a book from under his coat.*)

GEORGE. See! I have a book for you. I am working for a book dealer. He closed the shop early to-

day and I took the book. I must return it in the morning before he gets to the shop.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*taking the book eagerly*). Thank you, George. I'll sit up all night and finish it before sunrise.

GEORGE. I'll call for it on my way to the shop. I'll be going now.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Wait a minute. (*Benjamin goes to a desk, hides the book, and takes out a paper.*) I have written a letter for my brother James's paper, the "Courant." I've taken great pains with the style.

(*George and Benjamin both look over the letter.*)

GEORGE. You haven't signed your right name. "Silence, Do Good!" What a queer name!

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I did not dare sign my name, for then Brother James would not print it.

GEORGE. Your brother is hard on you. He doesn't think you can do anything. It's my opinion you can run the business as well as he can.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Sh! Here he comes with Dr. Holmes.

GEORGE. I'm going. He doesn't like me around.

(*George rushes to the window and jumps out.*)

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Thanks again for the book. I'll finish it before morning.

(*Benjamin goes to his brother's desk, places the letter upon it, and then goes back to the press. Enter James Franklin with Dr. Holmes.*)

JAMES FRANKLIN. Our paper is getting along nicely, Dr. Holmes, in spite of the fact that there are two other papers in town to compete with it.

DR. HOLMES. I'm glad you are prospering, James. I'll write some letters for it myself when I have time.

JAMES FRANKLIN. Ah, here is a letter. I'd like to have your opinion on it. (*He hands the letter to Dr. Holmes who scrutinizes it carefully.*)

DR. HOLMES. It's signed "Silence, Do Good." The English is fine, though. It reads smoothly, and the writer shows a keen sense of humor. Whoever wrote that either is or will be a famous writer.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*eagerly*). Oh, will he?

JAMES FRANKLIN. Why are you so concerned about the author?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Er-er-I'm just glad you have some good writers for your paper.

DR. HOLMES. Yes, the man who wrote that has a future. I should like to meet him.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Perhaps some day the writer will have courage enough to sign his own name.

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: A Street in Philadelphia.
Time: The Following Year.

Deborah Read is sweeping down the front steps of her father's house. Enter Benjamin Franklin, his pockets bulging with his wardrobe, and his arms full of bread. Deborah watches Benjamin with amusement.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*bowing low, his bread falling upon the ground*). Good morning, my dear young lady!

© Brown Bros.

DEBORAH READ MEETS BENJAMIN FRANKLIN ON HIS ARRIVAL IN PHILADELPHIA

DEBORAH READ (*laughing*). What a funny looking creature you are! Are you the baker's boy?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. No indeed, but I am willing to be.

DEBORAH READ. But who are you?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*bowing again*). I am a humble subject of his Majesty, the King.

(*Enter Mr. Read who looks keenly at Benjamin.*)

MR. READ. What's your name, boy?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Benjamin Franklin.

MR. READ. Where is your home?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. My home is in Boston, but

I have decided to reside in the quiet city of Philadelphia.

MR. READ. Did you run away from home?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. No sir, I walked.

DEBORAH READ. But won't your parents miss you?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I hardly think so since I left sixteen brothers and sisters at home.

MR. READ. Quite a family. But why did you come to Philadelphia?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I came to seek my fortune, sir.

MR. READ. What kind of work can you do?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I'm a printer by trade, sir, but I am willing to work at anything.

DEBORAH READ. You have a shop, Father. Why don't you take him in?

MR. READ. Would you like to work for me, boy?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. That depends upon my wages, sir.

MR. READ. I will give you $2 a week and your board.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. How much do you reckon my board is worth?

MR. READ. About $3 a week.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Then if you give me $5 a week, I'll board myself.

MR. READ (*laughing*). Well, my boy, you have an eye for business. I will take you at that price. Just come into the house and stay with us until you can find lodgings.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: Mr. Read's Printing Office, Philadelphia.
Time: Several Years Later.

Benjamin Franklin is sitting at a desk writing. Enter Mr. Read.

MR. READ. Good morning, Benjamin. We shall have a busy day if we are to finish our work before evening.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I've been thinking, sir, that the business is increasing so fast that you'll need a new apprentice.

MR. READ. Yes. I think we shall have to get a boy. As for you, Benjamin, I'd like to take you into partnership with me in a year or two.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Take me, sir? Why, I have no money.

MR. READ. That doesn't matter. You have brains and you are willing to work.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Yes, sir, I am willing to work. I'm also writing a book which I'd like to publish.

MR. READ. What is the name of it?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I call it "Poor Richard's Almanac."

MR. READ. What is it about?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. It's a collection of sayings and maxims, which, I think, will encourage poor boys.

MR. READ. Read me some of these sayings.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*reading*). "Never leave until tomorrow what you can do to-day."

MR. READ. That's a good maxim.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*reading*). "If time be of all things the most precious, wasting time must be the greatest evil."

MR. READ. That's well to remember.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*reading*). "Keep thy shop, and thy shop will keep thee."

MR. READ. Yes. Yes. Come, we'll try to keep our own shop, then we can expect our shop to keep us.

(*Enter Deborah.*)

DEBORAH READ. A letter for you, Benjamin.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*reaching his hand for it*). For me—I wonder from whom.

DEBORAH READ (*putting the letter behind her*). I shan't let you see it until you tell Father our secret. (*Benjamin stands embarrassed. Deborah laughs at him*). Fie upon thee, Benjamin. You act more like a timid school boy than a full-fledged printer.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*to Mr. Read*). I've long regarded your daughter, sir, very highly, and she has promised to be my wife if you will give your consent.

MR. READ. Well, well, well. I can scarcely realize that you two are no longer children. There is time yet, plenty of time. When I take you into business with me, Benjamin, you and my daughter shall be married.

DEBORAH READ. That's a just answer, Father. Benjamin, you may have your letter.

(*Benjamin takes the letter and reads eagerly.*)

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. A friend of mine offers me a chance to go to London to buy printing material for him.

MR. READ. Does he pay your way?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. He pays all the expenses of the trip and in return for this I am to make a report to him concerning the progress of printing abroad.

MR. READ. That's a fine chance, Benjamin. At the same time you may learn something that will help us in our business, and when you return you will become my partner.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. And Deborah and I shall marry.

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

SCENE I

Place: Home of Benjamin Franklin, Philadelphia.
Time: 1777.

Benjamin Franklin is seated at his desk writing. Noise of thunderstorm is heard. Someone knocks.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Come in, come in.

(*Enter clergyman with a dripping umbrella.*

CLERGYMAN. Good evening, Dr. Franklin.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Good evening. It's a bad night. I thought I heard the lightning strike near here.

CLERGYMAN. Yes. It struck the barn of one of my Quaker friends and burned it to the ground.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I was out in the storm just about a half hour ago and thought I saw a blaze to the east.

CLERGYMAN. I hear you are an inventor, Dr. Franklin, as well as a writer and a printer. Can't you devise something to keep houses from being destroyed by lightning?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. That's the very thing I have been working on. See this kite. It's made of silk and on the top is a metal point. I tied this hempen string to the kite and then attached this key to the end of the kite string near my hand. I had great difficulty in raising the kite in the storm, but finally was successful.

CLERGYMAN. What was the result?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I found that the metal point did attract the lightning. I felt the shock as I held the key. That proves to me that if we put metal rods on the houses and run them up a little above the chimney the rod will attract the lightning and save the house from being struck.

CLERGYMAN. But won't the lightning run off the rod and strike the house?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I would provide against that. The rods would be run along the side of the house and down into the ground. The lightning will follow the rod and explode in the ground.

CLERGYMAN. I shall have one put on the church steeple. I have always been afraid that the church might be struck and, being wood, might be totally destroyed.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Nearly everybody lives in a wooden house. I think my device will become popular.

© Brown Bros.

FRANKLIN'S FAMOUS KITE EXPERIMENT—HIS DISCOVERY THAT METAL ATTRACTS LIGHTNING

CLERGYMAN. I am sure it will. You and I work to the same end. I am mainly concerned in saving men's souls while you have devised something to save their lives.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Well, between us we will try to make them live here and hereafter.

(*The clergyman laughs and going to the window, looks out.*)

CLERGYMAN. The storm has abated and I think I'll go. It's growing late.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Come to see me again soon. Good evening.

CLERGYMAN. Good evening.

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

SCENE II

Place: Home of Franklin in Philadelphia.
Time: The Second Year of the Revolution.

Franklin is seated at a table writing letters. He wears spectacles. A sound of a galloping horse is heard off stage and, shortly after, a knock at the door. Franklin opens the door. Enter Colonel Young mud-bespattered .

COLONEL YOUNG. Good evening, Dr. Franklin. I have come from General Washington's headquarters.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Sit down, Colonel, and tell me the news on the battle line.

COLONEL YOUNG. Not much news, and what there is, is not encouraging. We have great difficulties with our men, sir.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Yes, I know. The soldiers have not been paid for three months.

COLONEL YOUNG. Something must be done, Dr. Franklin. Something *must* be done.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Just what are the conditions?

COLONEL YOUNG. We are short of ammunition and cannon, and for this reason we can't take the offensive or make an attack as Congress wants us to do. Besides, the British outnumber us two to one. We are short of rations. The men are greatly underfed and poorly clad. Our soldiers are loyal. They would bear all these hardships freely and uncomplainingly for their country. But they say they must

have their pay to send home to their families. Our soldiers receive hundreds of letters from home telling them that their children are hungry and asking them to send home money! We can't expect our soldiers to fight while their families are starving.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*pacing the floor to and fro*). You are right, Colonel. Something *must* be done now. I have spent the whole day writing appeals to my friends in France asking them to help. (*He indicates the pile of letters upon his desk.*) But if they *do* send money, it won't reach us for three months at the earliest.

COLONEL YOUNG. Can Congress raise no money?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Congress has failed in its attempt to raise money.

(*Franklin and Colonel Young pace the floor in perplexity. A knock is heard at the door. Franklin opens it. Enter Robert Morris.*)

ROBERT MORRIS. Good evening, Dr. Franklin.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Good evening, sir. This is Colonel Young of General Washington's army. (*The men shake hands.*)

ROBERT MORRIS. I am glad to meet you here, Colonel Young, for I want to send an important package to General Washington and I know of no more trusty messenger than yourself.

COLONEL YOUNG. I'll be glad to take the package to General Washington.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Colonel Young came to tell me of the sad condition of the army—without food, clothes, or money.

ROBERT MORRIS (*handing a package to Colonel Young*). This package contains ten thousand dollars, Colonel. It will help to cheer the army up till Congress can raise some more.

COLONEL YOUNG (*delighted*). Ten thousand dollars! That is like a gift from heaven. It will encourage the men to fight on bravely. I thank you, Mr. Morris, for your efforts—I'm off now to General Washington to tell of our good luck.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Be careful not to be caught by the mounted British scouts. It would be sad to lose the money.

COLONEL YOUNG. I'll take every precaution, Gentlemen, for I know what the loss of the money means.

ROBERT MORRIS. Our respects to the General.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. And tell him we are making every effort to obtain more money.

COLONEL YOUNG. I will deliver your messages, Gentlemen. Good evening, sirs.

(*Exit Colonel Young. Franklin and Morris stand in the door and watch him ride away.*)

ROBERT MORRIS. And now, Dr. Franklin, I have a little business with you if you have a little time to spare.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I am at your service.

(*Both sit at Franklin's desk.*)

ROBERT MORRIS. I have just come from a meeting of Congress. The main business of the meeting, as you probably know, is to find ways and means of raising money. We can get very little from taxation and as for voluntary gifts, we can't depend upon them.

It was suggested that since the French people and the French government are so friendly towards us, we might secure substantial aid from France.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Lafayette and De Kalb are fighting for us now.

ROBERT MORRIS. True, and Lafayette has fitted up a ship at his own expense.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I have spent the whole day writing letters to my friends in France.

ROBERT MORRIS. Congress suggests that we send a representative from America over to Paris.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. That would be a good plan.

ROBERT MORRIS. Congress delegated the mission to you. Will you accept?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. I will with pleasure. Congress may appoint me to any service which will promote the welfare of my country. Ever since this war for our independence has been in progress I have regretted the fact that I am seventy years of age, and too old to be a soldier. I therefore accept any other post Congress assigns to me.

[*Curtain*]

ACT V

Place: A Reception Room at the French Court.
Time: 1778.

French ladies and gentlemen are gathered about in conversation.

FIRST MADAME. I have a picture of Monsieur Franklin at my home. He is so learned looking.

FIRST MONSIEUR. Ah me, I do not know a home in Paris which cannot boast of a picture of that popular American gentleman.

SECOND MADAME. I can boast of a book written by Monsieur Franklin. It is called *Poor Richard's Almanac*. See, I brought it here to-night to ask Monsieur Franklin if he will autograph it.

ALL. A book of Monsieur Franklin? Where may one purchase it?

SECOND MADAME. We cannot purchase it here yet. I received this from America. Listen to his wise sayings: "Never leave until to-morrow what you can do to-day."—"If time be of all things the most precious, wasting time must be the greatest evil." "Keep thy shop, and thy shop will keep thee." "A word to the wise is enough." "God helps those who help themselves." "Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."

FIRST MONSIEUR. Monsieur Franklin must have followed his own advice at least in part, for I met him on the street to-day and he looked both healthy and wise, but I do not think he is wealthy.

FIRST MADAME. Monsieur Franklin is a public-minded and patriotic American. He has given much of his own money for his country's cause. How could he be wealthy?

FIRST MONSIEUR. We are going to honor Monsieur Franklin by naming a street after him and putting his portrait in the gallery.

SECOND MADAME. Madame the Duchess is going to give a great ball in his honor next month. The King will be there.

© Underwood and Underwood, N. Y.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, AMBASSADOR TO FRANCE, AT THE FRENCH COURT, 1778

FIRST MONSIEUR. The great Dr. Franklin has captured the hearts of all Frenchmen. I am thinking of offering my services in the cause of the Americans.

FIRST MADAME. That would not surprise me. Many of our other French gentlemen are thinking of doing the same thing. De Kalb, d'Estaing, and Lafayette are already fighting for the Americans.

SECOND MONSIEUR (*rushing up to the group*). The King approaches.

(*All stand aside as King Louis XVI. enters followed by several officers and noblemen. He turns and smiles graciously and gazes about as if looking for someone.*)

KING LOUIS (*to General Le Coq*). I do not see the noted American, Benjamin Franklin.

GENERAL LE COQ. He has not yet arrived, sire.

KING LOUIS. Escort him in when he arrives.

GENERAL LE COQ (*saluting*). Aye, sire.

(*King Louis exits into an inner chamber followed by all the noblemen and officers except the first officer. All stand silent and respectful until after the King has gone out of the room. Then the people flock around General Le Coq.*)

SECOND MONSIEUR (*to General Le Coq*). Tell me, my dear General, is the King to give audience to Dr. Franklin?

GENERAL LE COQ. He is.

FIRST MONSIEUR. It is rumored, too, my dear General, that the King is about to make an alliance with the Americans.

GENERAL LE COQ. That is also true.

FIRST MADAME. Will France come to the aid of the Americans in that event?

GENERAL LE COQ. Yes, Madame. I, for one, will gladly fight for the Americans.

ALL MESSIEURS. And I! And I!

(*Ladies applaud.*)

SECOND MADAME. A crowd has gathered at the door. The ladies are surrounding someone. I do believe it is Dr. Franklin.

(*Enter Franklin followed by Ladies and Gentlemen of the French Court. He bows and smiles to all.*)

FIRST MADAME (*stepping toward Franklin*). The honor and respect and homage of all the French people to Monsieur Franklin, the first American.

(*She steps forward and places a wreath of flowers on his head.*)

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. The friendship and love of all the American people to the generous and freedom-loving people of France.

GENERAL LE COQ. Pardon, Dr. Franklin, our sire, the King, desires to see you.

(*General Le Coq leads Franklin to the door and they exeunt into the private chamber of the King.*)

[*Curtain*]

EPILOGUE

Place: Sitting Room in Franklin's House.
Time: 1786.

Franklin sits at the table reading a book. Enter his little granddaughter. She runs to him. Franklin puts down his book and takes her upon his lap.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Ah, little girl, where are the rest of my grandchildren and what are they doing?

GRANDDAUGHTER. I promised them all I wouldn't tell you.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*in mock surprise*). Well, well, well! I shall have to investigate.

(*He tries to stand up, but the little girl pushes him back into the chair and sits on his knee again.*)

GRANDDAUGHTER. You mustn't leave this room.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*pretending to be serious*). Must not? Am I no longer master of my own house?

GRANDDAUGHTER (*putting arms around his neck*). You are my prisoner and you mustn't leave the room.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Well, well! I'm afraid the boys are plotting mischief.

GRANDDAUGHTER. No, Grandpa, it is a surprise.

(*Noises are heard outside. The door is thrust open and a table set with cookies, fruits, and nuts is carried in by the boys and girls.*)

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. A feast!

ALL. A feast to Grandpa!

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. A feast to Grandpa? A feast to me? Why, pray?

GRANDSON. What is the date today?

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (*looking around his desk*). Bless me! I've forgotten. Where is my almanac? (*He looks at the almanac.*) Upon my word—it is my birthday.

ALL. You are eighty years old to-day, Grandpa.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. No, no! I'm eighty years young and you have given me my first birthday party—come, come, sit around the table. Just think of it! Eighty years young, and my first birthday party.

[*Curtain*]

FRANKLIN'S ACHIEVEMENTS

Benjamin Franklin was one of the great Americans who lived in Revolutionary times. He was famous as a printer, publisher, writer, inventor, statesman, and as a civic-minded citizen.

Printer. He owned a printing office in Philadelphia and introduced the most up-to-date printing methods after a period of study in Europe.

Publisher. He published the Pennsylvania Gazette which is still published today under another name.

Writer. He issued *Poor Richard's Almanac* annually for twenty-five years. Franklin also wrote an autobiography.

Inventor. He discovered the identity of lightning and electricity; he invented rockers for his easy chair and a portable fireplace called the "Franklin Stove."

Statesman. He served as postmaster-general for twenty years, and as agent abroad for the Colonies. He was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and played an important part in the Constitutional Convention. Later he played an important part as Minister to France and helped to form a system of defense against the Indians.

Civic-Minded Citizen. He placed $20,000 of his own money at the service of Congress in the struggle for independence. He organized a police force, a fire department, a local militia, an academy of science and a free church. He put a street lamp in front of his own gate and paved his own sidewalk. He was also an apostle of thrift.

QUESTIONS FOR CLASS STUDY

1. Tell something of Benjamin Franklin's early ambitions to write.
2. Why did Franklin leave Boston and go to Philadelphia?
3. How does he show shrewd business ability when he first meets Mr. Read?
4. What book did Franklin write? Why did it become famous?
5. In what way did Franklin try to fight the destructive power of lightning?
6. Tell of other inventions worked out by Franklin.
7. Franklin was a printer, writer, publisher, statesman, inventor, and financier. In which field was he greatest? Give your reasons.
8. How does Franklin's early life prove him to have been a young man of strong character?
9. In what different ways did he serve his country during the Revolutionary war?
10. List Franklin's inventions and achievements.
11. Why was Franklin given such a fine reception at the French Court?

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Secure a copy of the writings of Benjamin Franklin. Each member of the class should learn one saying from *Poor Richard's Almanac* and recite it in answer to the roll call.
2. Read over the selections taken from *Poor Richard's Almanac*. Select those that have thrift for their subject and write a Composition on Thrift.

3. Examine carefully the picture of "Franklin at the Court of King Louis XVI.," by Baron Jolly. Compare it with the fifth act of the play.

4. Write a description of the costumes used at the time. Boys should describe the men's costumes and girls the ladies'.

5. Make a sketch showing Franklin's journey from Boston to Philadelphia.

6. Read the last part of the last act of "The Making of the Constitution." Explain what Franklin meant by "the vicissitudes of my hopes and fears as to its issue."

George Rogers Clark

The Father of the Northwest Territory

CHARACTERS

*Mrs. Boone	Third Lawmaker
*George Rogers Clark	Samuel Jones
*John Sevier	British Officer
*James Robertson	British Lady
*Daniel Boone	*Father Gibault
*Patrick Henry	Captain Helm
First Lawmaker	Mr. Bell
Second Lawmaker	Mr. Hunt

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

ACT I

Place: Daniel Boone's Cabin at Boonesboro on the Banks of the Kentucky River.
Time: Shortly before the Revolution.

George Rogers Clark, James Robertson and John Sevier are seated at a table. Mrs. Boone is preparing the meal. She places the food on the table, then buries her head in her apron and sobs.

MRS. BOONE. They will kill my little girl. They will scalp her!

CLARK. My dear Mrs. Boone, trust Daniel to catch those Indian kidnappers, and bring your little girl back safe and sound.

MRS. BOONE. Daniel and his companions have been gone for two days.

CLARK. Don't let that discourage you. The Indians had a good start on Boone, but never fear, he will catch them no matter how long it takes.

SEVIER. How many settlers accompanied Daniel?

MRS. BOONE. Eight—eight of the bravest men in Boonesboro.

SEVIER. And how many children were stolen?

MRS. BOONE. Three. My little girl and her two friends.

SEVIER. And had they wandered far into the woods?

MRS. BOONE. No, they were in front of the cabin. The Indians must have stolen up quietly and seized them.

ROBERTSON. Those savages are getting bold. We have got to give them a lesson—one they won't forget very soon. That's why we have come to see Daniel, Mrs. Boone.

MRS. BOONE. Dan will enter into any scheme to make Kentucky safe from Indian attacks in the future.

(*There is a noise outside the cabin. The men in the cabin seize their rifles. The door opens and the little Boone girl rushes into her mother's arms. Daniel enters followed by several of his companions. They carry extra rifles which they captured from the Indians.*)

BOONE (*to Mrs. Boone*). Here we are safe but very hungry. (*To friends.*) Welcome friends. I am glad you have come.

(*Business of men shaking hands and all gathering around the table.*)

CLARK. We have come all the way down the river to see you, Boone, about a very serious matter. The

Courtesy J. Philippson

PUPILS ACTING AS PIONEERS IN A HUNTING AND TRAPPING SCENE

Indians are giving great trouble all over the Cantuckee (Kentucky) and the Tennessee country, and they are fiercer than ever. Robertson, suppose you report on the condition of your settlement.

ROBERTSON. My settlement is near the banks of the Watauga. We have built our cabins, a block house and a stockade. We bought the lands from the Indians, so they left us to the peaceful cultivation of the ground for two years. But this spring they have become very hostile. They even crept up to the edge of the clearing and shot two settlers who were planting corn. Last winter they killed and scalped Jameson, one of our best hunters, while he was tending the traps.

BOONE. Scalped him? Ah, that's the secret. Somebody is urging those red skins on by buying the scalps.

SEVIER. It's the French in Canada. The Indians are hovering on the outskirts of our clearing, but so far have not killed anyone.

CLARK. You have been lucky. At Harrodsburg we dare not venture outside of the stockade, unless

we have some trusty rifles in the block house to cover our movements. On wash days at the river we must stand guard while the women wash the clothes. If one man goes for the water, two other pioneers go along with their rifles. It takes so much time to defend ourselves from the Indians, that there isn't much left for raising crops and for trapping. If this keeps up, we will starve or be driven back over the mountains to the East.

BOONE. Powder and lead are getting scarce.

CLARK. And now we come to the purpose of our meeting here. The wilderness belongs to Virginia, yet what has Virginia done to help her pioneers?

ALL. Nothing!

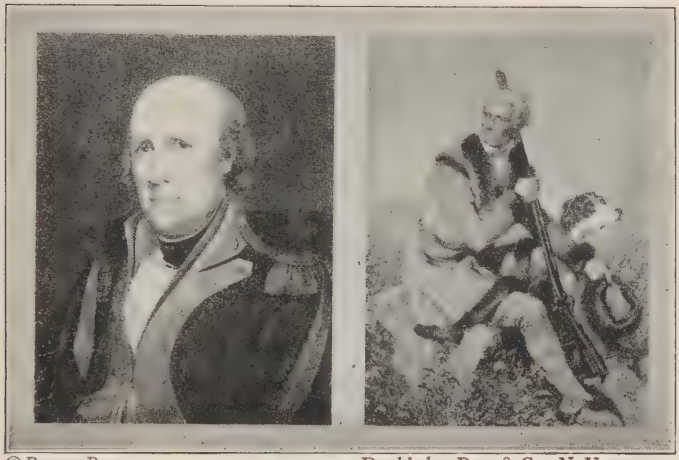
CLARK. You, Boone, built the "Wilderness Road" over the mountains and every year a few more pioneers come to settle here. But this spring no one has come. And the reason is that the Indians are growing so hostile that the people of the East are afraid to venture across the mountains. The pioneers of my settlement at Harrodsburg have asked me to go to Virginia to secure aid in driving the Indians out of Kentucky.

BOONE. Tell the Governor of Virginia that the inhabitants of Boonesboro join you in your petition for aid.

ROBERTSON. The people of Nashboro want Virginia's help, too.

SEVIER. The people of Watauga are Virginians by birth and Virginia ought to help them.

CLARK. We stand together in our demand upon Virginia. Lend me two trusty pioneers, Boone, and



© Brown Bros. Doubleday Page & Co., N. Y.

FAMOUS PIONEERS
Left, George Rogers Clark; Right, Daniel Boone.

I'll start this very hour over the "Wilderness Road" for Virginia with the message to Governor Henry, that if Kentucky is worth having it is worth fighting for.

ALL. Bravo!

BOONE. Who will strike the trail with Clark?

ALL. I! I! I!

BOONE (*indicating two young men*). You go Wells, and you, Higby. You have no families and we can spare you better than the others.

CLARK. We will leave now and before the summer is over I'll be back either with soldiers or alone.

(*Clark and his two escorts go to the door.*)

BOONE (*opening the door for them*). God speed you and tell the Governor if he can't send men to send powder.

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia.
Time: Shortly before the revolutionary war.

Patrick Henry and several of the law makers are sitting about.

PATRICK HENRY. His majesty, King George is wrong in trying to enforce that tea tax. The Colonies will not tolerate it. We are right when we maintain that "TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION IS TYRANNY."

FIRST LAWMAKER. We have friends in the English Parliament who will persuade the King to repeal that obnoxious tax. William Pitt and Edmund Burke are our friends.

SECOND LAWMAKER. Persuade the King to repeal the tax? I don't believe there is a man in England who can do that.

PATRICK HENRY. Then, sirs, these Colonies will rebel. It will mean war.

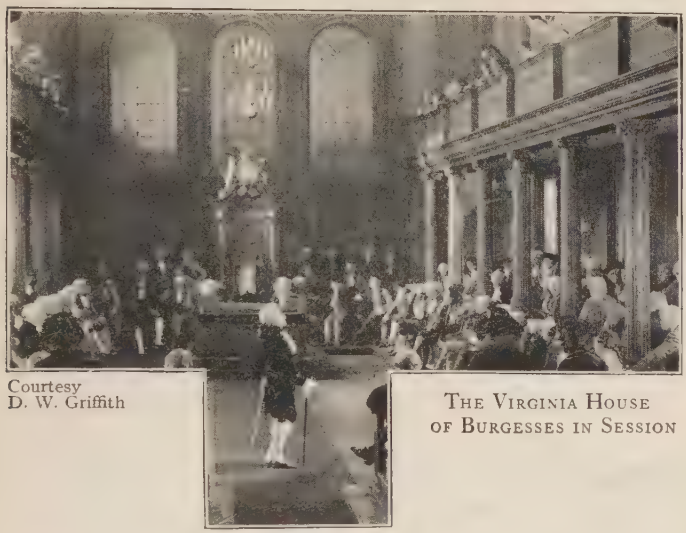
THIRD LAWMAKER. No, sir, not war. The people of Virginia and of New England are too loyal for that.

PATRICK HENRY. Nevertheless, they will resent injustice and we all know the tea tax is unjust.

THIRD LAWMAKER. I think the Colonists will accept the tax and pay it without grumbling.

PATRICK HENRY. You have lived long in London, sir, and don't know the colonial spirit.

(*There is sound of an approaching horseman. First Lawmaker goes to the door and opens it. Enter a horseman Samuel Jones, dusty and mud-bespattered.*)



Courtesy
D. W. Griffith

THE VIRGINIA HOUSE
OF BURGESSES IN SESSION

SAMUEL JONES. Greetings of Boston, to the citizens of Virginia and the gentlemen of the House of Burgesses.

PATRICK HENRY. Greetings! What news from Boston?

SAMUEL JONES. News, sir, that is likely to stir these colonies to rebellion.

ALL. Tell us!

SAMUEL JONES. The people of Massachusetts have refused to pay the tax on tea. Samuel Adams wrote a circular letter entreating all the people to stand together in the opposition to this tea tax. We had a meeting in Old South Church. Great crowds, pushed and jammed into the galleries, seats and aisles. Samuel Adams was the chairman. He stirred the people up to oppose the landing of the tea. The

crowd sent the captain of the tea ship to the governor to ask for permission to sail away from Boston, but the captain returned saying the governor would not allow him to do so. Immediately Samuel Adams jumped to his feet and shouted out, "THIS MEETING CAN DO NOTHING TO SAVE THE COUNTRY." That was a signal. We all rushed outside and by the light of the torches saw a group of citizens dressed up as Indians. These "Indians" rushed down to where the tea ships were at anchor, and went on board. They broke open the boxes and threw the tea into the sea.

(*The Virginians cheer the people of Boston.*)

PATRICK HENRY. They did right. I admire the people of Boston and their leader, Samuel Adams.

THIRD LAWMAKER. They did wrong, sir. They are rebels.

FIRST LAWMAKER. For shame! They are patriots.

SECOND LAWMAKER. Aye, they are patriots. I am proud of them.

THIRD LAWMAKER. I am loyal to the King—the King first and the Colonies after him.

PATRICK HENRY. We are loyal to the Colonies first and if the King is fair and just to the Colonies we will stand by him.

SAMUEL JONES. But the King is going to punish Boston. The King's governor is looking for Samuel Adams and the other "rebel leaders" as he calls them. The Governor has already sent to England for soldiers to keep us in order. Virginia's love of liberty is known far and wide. We feel sure you will stand by us against the English.

PATRICK HENRY. Massachusetts is right. Virginia will stand by her.

SECOND LAWMAKER. Aye, we will stand by her to the last.

THIRD LAWMAKER. Nay, sirs, I will not go against the King and Parliament. Massachusetts is wrong. I for one will not aid her. I am loyal to the King. Long live the King!

(*The third Lawmaker jumps to his feet and walks out angrily.*)

PATRICK HENRY. What preparation is Massachusetts making to withstand the King's troops?

SAMUEL JONES. We are having secret meetings, sir, and drill in the use of arms and ammunition and cannon, and hiding them in safe places in the small towns.

PATRICK HENRY. Good. Samuel Adams will not sleep when action is necessary. Virginia will not be far behind her northern sister.

(*Enter George Rogers Clark and his two companions.*)

CLARK. Greetings from across the mountains!

PATRICK HENRY. Welcome, friend Clark. You're just in time to hear the news—the King has placed a tax on tea and sent several shiploads to Boston. The citizens demanded of the Governor that he send the ships back. He refused, so they dressed as Indians, boarded the ships, and dumped the whole cargo of tea overboard.

CLARK. I am glad to hear it. We are not represented in Parliament so why respect the laws of Parliament.

FIRST LAWMAKER. That's the way we all feel about it. But the matter will not end here. The

King will probably send soldiers from England to Boston to enforce the payment of the taxes.

SAMUEL JONES. In that case blood will be shed, and if one colonist is killed all Massachusetts will be up in arms.

PATRICK HENRY. Not only all Massachusetts but all of Virginia.

CLARK. Not only Virginia and Massachusetts but the pioneers of the frontier will stand with the colonists.

PATRICK HENRY. If we do have war the pioneers will suffer, for the English will come down through Canada and will urge the Indians on to greater outrages and atrocities, therefore, friend Clark, you, Robertson, Sevier and Boone will have your hands full.

CLARK. I have been sent across the mountains to ask aid in driving the Indians out of the Wilderness.

FIRST LAWMAKER. Let's raise a company of as many volunteers as we can get to follow Clark over the mountains to the frontier.

CLARK. It will be several weeks before such a company can be raised and we need ammunition at once.

PATRICK HENRY. At the next meeting of the House of Burgesses we will vote that Kentucky be made into a Virginia county and that aid be sent, but in the meantime we have on hand five hundred pounds of powder and a barrel of lead which you can take back with you over the "Wilderness Road."

CLARK (*delighted*). Five hundred pounds of powder and a barrel of lead! I wouldn't trust myself over

the "Wilderness Road" with that precious load. We'll make a flat boat and go up the Ohio River. With this help we'll be able to hold out until you send reinforcements. And if war does come, depend upon the settlers of the frontier to do their share.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: Fort at Kaskaskia.
Time: July 4, 1778.

A man is playing a violin and the British soldiers are dancing with the ladies of Kaskaskia. An Indian is seated near the door watching the dancers. George Rogers Clark enters and closing the door quietly watches the dancers. The Indian seeing Clark springs to his feet and gives a war whoop. The dancing stops suddenly and the British soldiers rush toward Clark.

BRITISH OFFICER. A spy! An American Spy! Seize him.

(*Two officers rush forward to seize him.*)

CLARK. Stand back! Stand back I say! (*He quietly folds his arms.*) I am an American officer and you are my prisoners.

BRITISH OFFICER. It is false. To arms, men! To arms! (*He thrusts open a door and finds a group of Clark's soldiers standing outside. He falls back.*) To the windows! (*They rush to the windows and opening them, face bayonets of Clark's men stationed without.*)

CLARK. You are my prisoners. The whole town is surrounded by my soldiers and there is no escape. "GO ON WITH YOUR DANCE, BUT REMEMBER THAT YOU

NOW DANCE UNDER VIRGINIA AND NOT UNDER GREAT BRITAIN." But first surrender your arms.

(*The English soldiers pass Clark and place their swords on a table at his side. The ladies stand huddled in a group, frightened. The wife of a British officer approaches Clark.*)

BRITISH LADY. Oh sir, spare us! We have children at home. Spare us for their sakes!

CLARK. You are under the protection of American soldiers, madam, and you have nothing to fear.

(*Enter Father Gibault, a French priest.*)

FATHER GIBAULT (*to Clark*). Are you, sir, the commander of the American forces which have captured this town?

CLARK. I am.

FATHER GIBAULT. Then, as a soldier, you will be merciful to my people. Most of us are French and have taken no part in this war between the British and the Americans. We are peaceful settlers and I know you will spare our lives.

CLARK. Do not fear, good father, you shall not be harmed and your homes shall be spared. The Continental Congress of the American States makes war on no church and will protect all denominations from insult.

FATHER GIBAULT. I will go to my people and tell them the comforting news.

CLARK. Tell them to gather here at the fort without delay, for I have an announcement to make. (*Father Gibault exits and Clark goes to the window and opening it speaks to a soldier outside.*) Ring the bell at the fort and send all the inhabitants here at once.

Send Captain Helm here to me. (*To the British officers.*) You, sirs, stand over to the left away from the doors and windows. (*The British officers line up on the left side of the room.*) And you Ladies to the right!

(*The Ladies crowd in the right corner of the room. The door opens and Father Gibault enters with his congregation. They stand quietly and watch Clark. Ringing of a bell is heard off the stage.*)

CLARK. You are now under the protection of the American States. You'll be allowed your homes and your freedom if you are loyal to us. But if you try in any way to aid the British you will at once be placed under a guard at the fort. For those of you who are French I have good news. The King of France has made a treaty with the United States and is sending ships and soldiers to help us gain our independence. The good Father Gibault will go at once to Vincennes and notify the French settlers there of this fact.

(*Enter Captain Helm.*)

CAPTAIN HELM (*to Clark*). You sent for me, sir.

CLARK. Yes, take your men and go to Vincennes with Father Gibault. The French will want to join your company. Spend the time until I arrive in training the volunteers.

CAPTAIN HELM. Very good, sir.

(*He salutes and exits followed by Father Gibault. Clark walks toward the British soldiers.*)

CLARK. Gentlemen, until you are paroled you must remain under guard. (*He turns to the ladies.*) Ladies, you are at liberty to go to your homes.

(*The ladies exeunt quickly and the British soldiers march to the guard room at the left followed by armed American soldiers.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: Clark's Settlement in Southern Indiana.
Time: After The War.

Captain Helm, Bell and several of Clark's former soldiers are preparing traps and rifles for a trapping expedition.

CLARK. Well, boys, now that the war is over, I suppose we will all settle down to farming, hunting and trapping.

CAPTAIN HELM. Yes, the war has left me poor. I have nothing but the clothes I have on, a rifle and a few traps.

MR. BELL. I think if I had the tools I'd rather be a farmer than a trapper. The land is fertile and crops are nearly always good.

CLARK. Will you be ready to start on the trapping expedition early in the morning, boys.

ALL. Yes.

CAPTAIN HELM. They say the fox and beaver are plentiful along the Miami River. Shall we go there to the Blue Licks?

CLARK. Yes. I guess so.

(*A horseman dressed in eastern fashion enters quickly.*)

MR. BELL. Hello, there! Who are you, stranger?

MR. HUNT. My name's Hunt, Joseph Hunt.

CLARK. And where do you hail from?

MR. HUNT. I come from Washington. I have a message from Congress for Colonel George Rogers Clark.

CLARK. A message from Congress for me!

MR. HUNT. Are you Mr. Clark?

CLARK. I am.

MR. HUNT. Then you are the man I want. Congress has passed a vote of thanks to you and your men for your brave and able services at Kaskaskia, Cabokia, and Vincennes. Congress acknowledges that you and your men performed one of the greatest services rendered by any soldiers during the war. You have made it possible for the United States to claim the Mississippi River as the western boundary when England acknowledged our independence.

CLARK. We only did our duty.

MR. HUNT. And Congress has also given three hundred acres of land to each who served under you. The land is to be surveyed, staked out and is to be known as, "Clark's Grant." It is rich farm land and not many miles from here.

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What were the dangers attending frontier life at this time?
2. Describe a pioneer house on the frontier at this time.
3. What was the object of Clark's journey to Virginia?
4. Recount the reasons for the Revolution of 1776.
5. How did the Virginians help Clark and the pioneers?
6. Where is Kaskaskia?
7. How did Congress reward Clark and his pioneers?

8. Why is the Northwest Territory called the nest egg of the United States?

9. Describe the work of three great pioneers who helped to settle the Northwest Territory.

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. In a two-minute speech justify the statement that Clark not only saved the infant settlements in Kentucky from destruction at the hands of the British and the Indians but it won the Northwest for the United States.

2. Describe in a letter to a friend Clark's capture of Kaskaskia.

3. After reading over the Prologue of Manifest Destiny, write a paragraph showing what we owe to Clark.

4. Look up your history book or consult a reference book at the library to find out the plan by which the Northwest territory was surveyed and mapped out. Explain how the Ordinance of 1787 provided for schools.

5. Write a description of a day's hunting or trapping trip with Daniel Boone near Boonesborough in 1776. Of a day with Mrs. Boone at the Boone cabin in Boonesborough in 1776.

6. Write a description of the trials which you think Clark and his companions might have met in taking the powder back to Kentucky.

The Making of the Constitution

The Delegates at the Constitutional Convention

*George Washington, *President*
*William Jackson, *Secretary*

DELAWARE
*George Read
Gunning Bedford
*John Dickenson
Richard Basset
*Jacob Broome

CONNECTICUT
William Johnson
*Roger Sherman
*Oliver Ellsworth

GEORGIA
*William Few
Abraham Baldwin
William Pierce
William Houston

MASSACHUSETTS
*Elbridge Gerry
*Nathaniel Gorham
*Rufus King
Caleb Strong

NEW JERSEY
*William Livingston
David Brearly
William C. Houston
*William Paterson
Jonathan Dayton

NEW YORK
John Lansing
Robert Yates
*Alexander Hamilton

MARYLAND
James McHenry
Daniel Janifer
John Mercer
*Luther Martin

SOUTH CAROLINA
*John Rutledge
*Charles C. Pinckney
*General Pinckney
Pierce Butler

* Those who have speaking parts. In order to give the Convention Hall atmosphere to the classroom, name cards of the delegates should be placed upon the pupils' desks. Throw a cover over the teacher's desk, and place some quill pens about.

PENNSYLVANIA
*Benjamin Franklin
Thomas Mifflin
Robert Morris
George Clymer
Thomas Fitzsimmons
Jared Ingersoll
*James Wilson
*Gouverneur Morris

NEW HAMPSHIRE
John Langdon
Nicholas Gillman

VIRGINIA
*Edmund Randolph
John Blair
*James Madison
*George Mason
*George Wythe
James McClurg

NORTH CAROLINA
*Alexander Martin
*William Davie
William Blount
Richard Spaight
*Hugh Williamson

ACT I

Place: The Convention Hall, Philadelphia.
Time: May, 1787. The Three Plans of Union.

The delegates file into the room and stand in their places. Enter Washington, who passes to the president's chair. The delegates stand respectfully until Washington is seated.

WASHINGTON. We will open the Convention to-day by having the rules read by the Chairman of the Rules Committee.

WYTHE. The Rules Committee suggests for the governing of this Convention, the following rules:

Rule 1. A house to do business shall consist of the Deputies of not less than seven states.

Rule 2. Every member rising to speak, shall first address the President.

Rule 3. No member shall speak more than twice upon the same subject, without special leave.

Rule 4. A member may be called to order by the President at any time the President deems it necessary.

Rule 5. No member shall be absent from the Convention, so as to interrupt the representation of his state, without leave.

Rule 6. Only members will be allowed free access to the Journal of these meetings.

RANDOLPH. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, we are gathered here from all parts of our country for the purpose of laying the foundations of a stronger and more perfect government. "WE HAVE A HIGH RESPECT FOR THE AUTHORS OF THE CONFEDERATION, AND WE KNOW THEY PLANNED AS ARDENT PATRIOTS FOR THE COUNTRY'S WELFARE, YET WE MUST DISCUSS THE DEFECTS OF THEIR WORK." First, the Confederation gives us no security against foreign invasions. Second, it cannot check a quarrel among the states. Third, it is not even a greater power than the states. "WITHOUT DWELLING LONGER UPON THE DEFECTS OF THE ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION, I WILL RESPECTFULLY PROCEED WITH WHAT I BELIEVE TO BE THE REMEDY, THE BASIS OF WHICH IS THE REPUBLICAN PRINCIPLE." I have prepared and propose a series of resolutions —fifteen in number, which I will briefly enumerate:

Proposition One concerns the correction and enlargement of the Articles of the Confederation.

Proposition Two deals with suffrage and suggests the apportionment according to the number of free male inhabitants.

Proposition Three advocates a national legislature of two branches.

Proposition Four deals with the method of electing members of the legislature to the first branch, by the people.

Proposition Five suggests that the members of the second branch be elected by the members of the first branch.

Proposition Six deals with the rights of the legislature and suggests—besides all the rights granted under the Confederation—also the right to legislate in all cases in which the separate states are incompetent.

Proposition Seven concerns the terms of the executive and remuneration for service.

Proposition Eight establishes a judiciary to examine the acts of the legislature.

Proposition Nine suggests laws governing the judiciary.

Proposition Ten provides for the admission of new states.

Proposition Eleven recommends a republican form of government in each state.

Proposition Twelve provides for the continuance of Congress and of its authority and privileges.

Proposition Thirteen suggests means for amending the Articles of Union.

Proposition Fourteen requires that states be bound by oath to support the Articles of Union.

Proposition Fifteen requires that amendments be submitted to the legislatures of the various states. In conclusion, I beg the Deputies present to read in full these propositions and to consider them carefully. "I EXHORT YOU EARNESTLY NOT TO SUFFER

THIS PRESENT OPPORTUNITY OF ESTABLISHING GENERAL PEACE, HARMONY, HAPPINESS, AND LIBERTY IN THE UNITED STATES TO PASS AWAY UNIMPROVED."

MASON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, here we have had submitted for our consideration, a plan of union which shows thoughtful and able consideration on the part of its originator, Mr. Randolph. I hereby move that Mr. Randolph's resolutions be submitted to a committee appointed to consider the same.

FEW (*rising*). I second the motion.

WASHINGTON. The motion has been regularly made and seconded that a committee be appointed to consider Mr. Randolph's plan of union. All in favor signify by the usual sign.

ALL. Aye! Aye!

WASHINGTON (*rising*). Contrary? (*Silence.*) The motion is carried. The secretary will please keep on file Mr. Randolph's resolutions, with which I urge every Deputy present to become familiar before our next meeting.

C. PINCKNEY (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, I have, prior to this meeting, read Mr. Randolph's Resolutions and, for the most part, approve. I myself have the honor to lay before the House a draft of a federal government, which I have prepared to be agreed upon by the free and independent states of America. It comprises sixteen articles, some of which are similar to the propositions of Mr. Randolph. I agree with Mr. Randolph in that the Government should consist of a legislative, an executive, and a judicial department. I agree with

A HISTORY CLASS REPRESENTING THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION IN SESSION

him that the legislative powers should be vested in a congress, and that the congress should consist of two branches. I moreover agree that the members of the first branch should be elected by the people, and that the members of the second branch be chosen by the members of the first. I disagree with Mr. Randolph as to what powers shall be granted to congress. Mr. Randolph says, "RESOLVED THAT THE LEGISLATURE ENJOY THE RIGHTS OF LEGISLATING IN ALL CASES IN WHICH THE SEPARATE STATES ARE INCOMPETENT." I believe the resolution too sweeping and too indefinite. In my plan I suggest that each and every separate duty and power of the legislature be enumerated. "I WISH TO ASK MR. RANDOLPH IF HE WOULD ABOLISH THE STATE GOVERNMENTS ALTOGETHER."

RANDOLPH (*rising*). Mr. President, in reply to Mr. Pinckney, I would say that state governments have their proper place and use, but I maintain that

"THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT OUGHT TO BE SUPREME IN ITS LEGISLATIVE, EXECUTIVE, AND JUDICIAL DEPARTMENTS." (*Applause.*)

C. PINCKNEY (*rising*). I believe that Mr. Randolph gives too much power to congress. The state governments must not be swallowed by the federal government. (*Applause.*)

GERRY (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, I believe that we are not as yet sufficiently familiar with either Mr. Randolph's or Mr. Pinckney's plan for a federal government, to discuss the details. I therefore suggest that Mr. Pinckney also place his Articles of Union with the secretary, and that each member become familiar with the contents before our next meeting.

(*Pinckney hands his plan to the secretary.*)

PATERSON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Delegates, I have several objections to Mr. Randolph's propositions, to which I should like to call the attention of this Convention. I believe with Mr. Pinckney that Mr. Randolph plans to give too much power to congress and too little to the states. By Mr. Randolph's plan, "I BELIEVE THE STATE GOVERNMENTS, ESPECIALLY THE SMALL STATES, WOULD BE ABSORBED AND THAT THE STATES WOULD LOSE THEIR INDIVIDUALITY AND THEIR RIGHTS. I TAKE THE LIBERTY OF SUBMITTING TO THIS CONVENTION A PLAN OF FEDERAL GOVERNMENT WHICH WILL CORRECT THE ARTICLES OF THE CONFEDERATION AND AT THE SAME TIME NOT DEPRIVE THE INDIVIDUAL STATES OF THEIR RIGHTS AND POWER."

(*Applause. Mr. Paterson passes his papers to the secretary.*)

HAMILTON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, we now have before us for our consideration, three plans for the foundation of a federal government. It is our business to study them carefully and to choose the best and most feasible points from these plans. I hold this to be of vital importance, "THE PRINCIPLES OF THE PEOPLE WILL ENDURE NOTHING BUT A REPUBLICAN FORM OF GOVERNMENT." The Articles of the Confederation failed in this respect, and we should profit by the failure. (*Applause.*)

WILSON. Mr. President, I move that this Convention adjourn until to-morrow to enable each member to investigate these three plans for government.

FEW. I second the motion.

WASHINGTON. The motion has been made and seconded that we adjourn. All in favor?

ALL. Aye! Aye!

WASHINGTON. Contrary? (*Silence.*) The motion for adjournment till to-morrow is carried.

(*The Delegates all stand until Washington passes out, and then exeunt after him.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: The Convention Hall, Philadelphia.
Time: June, 1787. The First Compromise.

Enter Washington followed by the other Delegates who wait respectfully for Washington to take his place. Then all sit.

WASHINGTON. Our last meeting was taken up largely with the discussion as to how we should

determine the number of Delegates in the first house of the legislature. It was suggested that the Delegates be apportioned to the whole number of free men in the several states. The Convention is now open for the continuation of the discussion.

KING (*rising*). Mr. President, and fellow Deputies, I can see no good reason why the number of inhabitants should be the basis of representation. Political representation ought to be determined by wealth, property, and ability. "PROPERTY IS THE PRIMARY OBJECT OF SOCIETY AND IN FIXING VOTES PROPERTY OUGHT NOT TO BE EXCLUDED FROM THE ESTIMATE."

GENERAL PINCKNEY (*rising*). Whether property or people be considered the basis of representation, I must insist that the negroes be included in the counting.

FRANKLIN. "LEGISLATURES MAY OR MAY NOT REPRESENT PROPERTY AND WEALTH. BUT THEY MUST PRIMARILY REPRESENT THE PEOPLE."

FEW. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, Georgia will accept no plan for a government unless her slaves are counted. I therefore insist that the negroes be counted—all of them.

GORHAM. I am of the opinion that three-fifths of them is all that can be admitted to the count.

GERRY. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, this ratio of three-fifths was fixed by the present Congress of the Confederation. It was then argued by the states having slaves that they were still more inferior to the white man. Then it was a question of paying

taxes. Now, when it is a question of gaining representation for the South, Mr. Few insists that they be counted equally. No sir, I believe three-fifths is a very generous proportion.

KING (*rising*). Mr. President, I verily believe that the admission of the blacks to the count, although they have no vote themselves, will excite great discontent in the states having no slaves.

WILSON. "I DO NOT SEE ON WHAT PRINCIPLE THE ADMISSION OF BLACKS TO THE COUNT OF REPRESENTATION CAN BE EXPLAINED. ARE THEY TO BE ADMITTED AS CITIZENS? THEN WHY THE FRACTION? ARE THEY TO BE ADMITTED AS PROPERTY? THEN WHY IS NOT ALL PROPERTY TO BE COUNTED?"

DAVIE. "IT IS HIGH TIME TO SPEAK OUT. NORTH CAROLINA WILL NEVER ENTER THE UNION ON ANY OTHER TERMS THAT DO NOT PROVIDE FOR THE COUNTING OF AT LEAST THREE-FIFTHS OF THE BLACKS. IF THE EASTERN STATES MEAN TO EXCLUDE THEM ALTOGETHER, THEN OUR BUSINESS IS AT AN END."

MORRIS (*rising*). "MR. PRESIDENT AND FELLOW DEPUTIES, I AM COMPELLED TO DECLARE MYSELF REDUCED TO A DILEMMA OF EITHER DOING AN INJUSTICE TO THE SOUTHERN STATES OR OF DOING AN INJUSTICE TO HUMAN NATURE. I MUST THEREFORE CHOOSE THE FORMER. I CAN NEVER AGREE TO GIVE SUCH ENCOURAGEMENT TO THE SLAVE AS WOULD BE GIVEN BY ALLOWING THE SOUTHERN STATES REPRESENTATION FOR THEIR NEGROES."

GENERAL PINCKNEY. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, the three-fifths representation will never in

my mind encourage the slave trade, which, if let alone, will gradually decrease and die out.

FEW. I move the subject of counting three-fifths of the slaves be put to a vote by ballot.

DAVIE. I second the motion.

WASHINGTON. Motion has been made and seconded that the proposition for admitting to the count in the representation of the first branch of the legislature three-fifths of the negroes—all in favor of voting on the question will say "Aye."

ALL. Aye! Aye!

WASHINGTON. Those of the contrary opinion will say "No." (*Few "Noes."*) The motion is carried.

(*The secretary distributes blanks and the Deputies vote. They hand their ballots to the secretary, who counts them.*)

SECRETARY JACKSON (*rising and reading the result*). "AYES, CONNECTICUT, PENNSYLVANIA, VIRGINIA, NORTH CAROLINA, GEORGIA—SIX STATES. NOES, NEW JERSEY AND DELAWARE—TWO STATES. DIVIDED, MASSACHUSETTS AND SOUTH CAROLINA." Motion is carried—6 to 2. (*Applause.*)

READ. I move this Convention adjourn till to-morrow.

PATERSON. I second the motion.

WASHINGTON. All in favor of the motion for adjournment will say "Aye."

ALL. Aye!

WASHINGTON. Contrary? (*Silence.*) I declare this Convention adjourned till to-morrow.

(*The members who do not immediately pass out, gather about in groups to talk.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: The Convention Hall, Philadelphia.
Time: July, 1787. The Second Compromise.

Enter all members following Washington who takes his place in the speaker's chair.

READ (*rising*). Mr. President, we have now conceded to the larger states proportionate representation. That means a large state like Virginia would have as many Delegates in Congress as twelve states the size of Delaware. I therefore propose that the members of the second branch of the legislature be chosen on a different basis that will give more power to the smaller states.

SHERMAN (*rising*). "MR. PRESIDENT AND FELLOW MEMBERS, WE HAVE SPENT SEVERAL WEEKS NOW ON JUST ONE QUESTION—THAT OF FIXING THE APPORTIONMENT OF REPRESENTATIVES IN CONGRESS. WE ARE NOW AT A FULL STOP AND I SUPPOSE THAT NOBODY IN THE STATES FROM WHICH WE CAME EXPECTS US TO GO HOME WITHOUT DOING SOMETHING."

FEW (*rising*). Mr. President, it is my belief that in the second branch of the legislature each state should have one vote.

GENERAL PINCKNEY (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, I can see no adequate reason why each state should have equal representation in the second branch. Mr. Read has said that Virginia would have as much power as twelve states the size of Delaware. I should like to ask why, since Virginia has twelve times as many people as

Delaware, should it not have twelve times as many representatives in Congress? The basis of representation in the second house should also be proportionate to the people.

MORRIS (*rising*). Mr. President, if we do not yield on both sides, our business here must soon be at an end.

BROOME (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, "I HEREBY GIVE NOTICE TO THE HOUSE THAT I RESERVE TO MYSELF THE RIGHT TO CLAIM FOR MY STATE EQUAL VOICE IN THE SECOND BRANCH OF THE LEGISLATURE." This right cannot reasonably be denied to the small states after their concession to the larger states in regard to the representation in the first branch.

PATERSON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, "I THINK IT IS HIGH TIME FOR THIS CONVENTION TO ADJOURN. NO CONCILIATION OTHER THAN THAT OF EQUALITY OF REPRESENTATION IN THE SECOND BRANCH CAN EVER BE ADMISSIBLE TO THE SMALLER STATES." I repeat, if this conciliation cannot be reached, we had better adjourn and go home. We are of no further use here.

SEVERAL. For shame! For shame!

FRANKLIN (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, peace and patience I beg of you gentlemen. We did not come here to air our own personal feelings but to render our best service to all the states. The diversity of opinion turns upon two points: first, the Delegates from the small states say that if the legislature is apportioned according to the number of people, their liberties are in danger; second, the Delegates from the large states say that if equality

Courtesy D. W. Griffith

A SCENE SHOWING GEORGE WASHINGTON TAKING THE OATH OF OFFICE

of the small states is granted, their money will be in danger. "WHEN A GOOD PLATFORM OR TABLE IS TO BE MADE AND THE EDGES OF THE PLANKS DO NOT FIT, THE CARPENTER TAKES A LITTLE OFF BOTH AND MAKES A GOOD JOINT." In like manner, both large and small states must yield something.

PATERSON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, have the small states not yielded quite enough? They will have very little representation in the first branch of the legislature. Therefore in the second branch, the small states not only require but demand equal representation. This is the only manner in which they will consent to join the Union.

(*Applause from the Deputies of the small states.*)

MORRIS. I propose that rather than have the efforts of this Convention come to nothing, we of the

large states concede this point to the delegates of the small states.

FEW. I propose that it be put to the vote.

SEVERAL. Second the motion!

WASHINGTON. Motion has been made and seconded that the question of allowing each state equal voice in the second branch of the legislature be put to vote. All in favor?

ALL. Aye! Aye!

WASHINGTON. Contrary? (*Silence.*) Motion carried.

(*Secretary Jackson distributes the slips and collects the votes.*)

SECRETARY JACKSON (*reading the results*). "AYES, NEW HAMPSHIRE, MASSACHUSETTS, CONNECTICUT, PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE, VIRGINIA, NORTH CAROLINA, SOUTH CAROLINA, GEORGIA—NINE STATES. NAYS, MARYLAND—ONE STATE." Motion carried.

FRANKLIN. I rejoice in the spirit of compromise that has triumphed to-day.

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: The Convention Hall, Philadelphia.
Time: August, 1787. The Third Compromise.

Enter Washington, followed by the other Delegates, who take their places in the Convention Hall.

MARTIN. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, it is my belief that the resolution which has been passed to allow a count of three-fifths of the slaves in the apportionment of the representatives, will encourage

the importation of slaves. "SLAVES WEAKEN ONE PART OF THE UNION WHICH IT IS THE DUTY OF THE OTHER PART TO PROTECT." I therefore propose that a heavy tax per head be imposed or that the slave traffic be abolished altogether.

RUTLEDGE. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, I do not see how the importation of slaves can be encouraged by the apportionment clause. "THE TRUE QUESTION IS, WHETHER THE SOUTHERN STATES SHALL OR SHALL NOT BE PARTIES TO THE UNION. IF THE NORTHERN STATES CONSULT THEIR INTEREST THEY WILL NOT OPPOSE THE INCREASE OF THE SLAVES."

ELLSWORTH. I am of the opinion that each state should import what it pleases. The morality or the wisdom of it belongs to the state itself. "WHAT ENRICHES ONE PART OF THE COUNTRY ENRICHES THE WHOLE AND THE STATES ARE THE BEST JUDGES OF THEIR PARTICULAR INTERESTS."

Charles PINCKNEY. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, South Carolina can never receive any plan of union that prohibits the slave trade.

SHERMAN. I heartily disapprove of the slave trade, yet I believe that if the states are let alone, they will discontinue this traffic altogether.

MASON. "THIS EVIL TRAFFIC IN SLAVES ORIGINATED IN THE AVARICE OF BRITISH MERCHANTS. IN THE PAST THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT CONSTANTLY CHECKED THE ATTEMPTS OF THE VIRGINIANS TO PUT A STOP TO IT, BECAUSE IT WAS A PROFITABLE BUSINESS. THE PRESENT QUESTION CONCERNS NOT THE IMPORTING STATES ALONE BUT THE WHOLE UNION. THE EVIL OF HAVING SLAVES WAS EXPERIENCED DURING THE LATE

WAR. SLAVERY DISCOURAGES THE ARTS AND MANUFACTURES. SLAVES PREVENT THE EMIGRATION OF THE WHITES WHO REALLY ENRICH AND STRENGTHEN A COUNTRY. I HOLD IT ESSENTIAL FROM EVERY POINT OF VIEW THAT THE GENERAL GOVERNMENT SHOULD HAVE THE POWER TO PREVENT THE INCREASE OF SLAVERY."

GENERAL PINCKNEY. "SOUTH CAROLINA AND GEORGIA CANNOT DO WITHOUT THEIR SLAVES. I ADMIT IT TO BE REASONABLE TO PLACE A DUTY ON THEM AS ON THE OTHER IMPORTS."

DICKENSON. I consider it inadmissible on every principle of honor and safety that the importation of slaves should be authorized to the states by the Constitution. "THE TRUE QUESTION IS WHETHER OR NOT THE NATIONAL HAPPINESS WOULD BE PROMOTED OR IMPEDED BY THE IMPORTATION. ENGLAND AND FRANCE PERMIT SLAVERY IN THEIR COLONIES, AT THE SAME TIME SLAVES ARE EXCLUDED FROM BOTH OF THESE KINGDOMS."

GENERAL PINCKNEY. I am sure that the South will be willing to have a tax placed on the imported slaves, but I am also sure that it will not be willing to exclude them in any short time.

LIVINGSTON. Mr. President, the committee of eleven appointed to consider the subject of the importation of slaves makes the following recommendation: "THAT THE MIGRATION OR IMPORTATION OF SUCH PERSONS AS THE SEVERAL STATES SHALL THINK PROPER TO ADMIT SHALL NOT BE PROHIBITED BY THE LEGISLATURE PRIOR TO THE YEAR 1800, BUT A TAX OR DUTY MAY BE IMPOSED ON SUCH MIGRATION OR

IMPORTATION AT A RATE NOT EXCEEDING THE AVERAGE OF THE DUTIES LAID ON IMPORTS."

GENERAL PINCKNEY. Mr. President and fellow Deputies, "I MOVE TO STRIKE OUT THE WORDS, 'THE YEAR EIGHTEEN HUNDRED' AS THE YEAR LIMITING THE IMPORTATION OF SLAVES; AND TO INSERT THE WORDS, 'THE YEAR EIGHTEEN HUNDRED AND EIGHT.'"

GORHAM. Mr. President, I second the motion.

MADISON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, twenty years will produce all the mischief that can be apprehended from the liberty to import slaves. So long a term will be more dishonorable to the American character, than to say nothing at all about it in the Constitution.

WILLIAMSON (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, "BOTH IN OPINION AND PRACTICE I AM AGAINST SLAVERY; BUT I THINK IT MORE IN FAVOR OF HUMANITY, FROM A VIEW OF ALL CIRCUMSTANCES TO LET IN SOUTH CAROLINA AND GEORGIA ON THESE TERMS, THAN TO EXCLUDE THEM FROM THE UNION."

GORHAM (*rising*). Mr. President and fellow Deputies, I move the question be voted upon by ballot.

SEVERAL. I second the motion.

WASHINGTON. The motion has been made and seconded that this Convention vote by ballot upon the following question: "THAT THE MIGRATION OR IMPORTATION OF SUCH PERSONS AS THE SEVERAL STATES NOW EXISTING SHALL THINK PROPER TO ADMIT, SHALL NOT BE PROHIBITED BY THE LEGISLATURE PRIOR TO THE YEAR 1808." All in favor signify by the usual sign.

ALL. Aye! Aye!

WASHINGTON. Contrary? (*Silence.*)

(*Secretary Jackson distributes the blanks and collects them after the Deputies vote.*)

SECRETARY JACKSON (*rising and reading the result*). AYES, NEW HAMPSHIRE, MASSACHUSETTS, CONNECTICUT, MARYLAND, NORTH CAROLINA, SOUTH CAROLINA, GEORGIA—SEVEN STATES. NAYS, NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE, VIRGINIA—FOUR STATES. Motion carried. (*Applause.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT V

Place: The Convention Hall, Philadelphia.
Time: September, 1787. The Signing of the Constitution.

All file in in the usual order and wait for the President to sit. All sit. Moment of silence. Washington rises and addresses the assemblage.

WASHINGTON. We have now been present at this Convention for four months. We have represented our individual states with individual ideals. But we have all assembled here for the purpose of forming a more perfect Union than that assured to us under the Articles of Confederation. We have accomplished our purpose, and our labor is at an end, save for the formal affixing of our signatures. It has given me much pleasure to preside over this meeting and to become acquainted with the distinguished Deputies of all the states. There is but one more matter to be disposed of. What is to be done with the Journal and other records of this Convention? Are they to be destroyed, or is each member to be allowed a copy?

HAMILTON. Mr. President, I move that the Journal of proceedings be preserved and retained by the President of this Convention and remain subject to the new Congress to be formed under the Constitution.

FEW. I second the motion.

WASHINGTON. Are you ready for the question? All in favor?

ALL. Aye! Aye!

WASHINGTON. Contrary? (*Silence.*)

FRANKLIN (*walking to the Secretary's desk and taking a quill*). We are now come to the business of signing our names to this Constitution. I wish the indulgence of the house to express but a few observations: "WHEN YOU ASSEMBLE A NUMBER OF MEN TO HAVE THE ADVANTAGE OF THEIR JOINT WISDOM, YOU INEVITABLY ASSEMBLE WITH THESE MEN THEIR PREJUDICES, THEIR PASSIONS, THEIR ERRORS OF OPINION, THEIR LOCAL INTERESTS, AND THEIR SELFISH VIEWS. FROM SUCH AN ASSEMBLAGE CAN A PERFECT PRODUCTION BE EXPECTED? IT THEREFORE ASTONISHES ME TO SEE THIS CONSTITUTION APPROACH SO NEAR PERFECTION AS IT DOES."

(*Applause as Franklin signs the Constitution. A line of signers follow his example as the following dialogue goes on.*)

RANDOLPH. I apologize for refusing to sign this document. "I DO NOT MEAN TO OPPOSE IT. I SIMPLY REFUSE TO SIGN BECAUSE I BELIEVE THE OBJECT OF THIS CONVENTION HAS NOT BEEN ATTAINED."

MORRIS. "I TOO HAVE OBJECTIONS, BUT CONSIDERING THE PRESENT PLAN THE BEST THAT CAN BE

© Brown Bros.

DELEGATES AT THE CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION SIGNING THE AMERICAN CONSTITUTION

ATTAINED, I SHALL TAKE IT WITH ALL ITS FAULTS."

(*Applause as he signs.*)

HAMILTON. I do earnestly hope that "EVERY MEMBER PRESENT WILL LEND HIS MORAL SUPPORT TO THE WORK OF THIS CONVENTION" with his signature.

(*Hamilton signs.*)

GENERAL PINCKNEY. "I SHALL SIGN THE CONSTITUTION WITH A VIEW TO SUPPORTING IT WITH ALL MY INFLUENCE, AND HEREBY PLEDGE MYSELF ACCORDINGLY." (*Applause as General Pinckney signs.*)

WASHINGTON. "SHOULD THE STATES REJECT THIS EXCELLENT CONSTITUTION, THE PROBABILITY IS THAT AN OPPORTUNITY WILL NEVER PRESENT ITSELF AGAIN TO CANCEL ANOTHER IN PEACE. THE NEXT WILL BE DRAWN IN BLOOD."

(*Franklin stands and points to a painting above the President's chair.*)

FRANKLIN. "THE ARTIST WHO DESIGNED THAT CARVING EVIDENTLY HAD TROUBLE IN DISTINGUISH-

ING BETWEEN THE RISING AND THE SETTING SUN. I HAVE OFTEN, IN THE COURSE OF THIS CONVENTION AND THE VICISSITUDES OF MY HOPES AND FEARS AS TO ITS ISSUE, LOOKED AT THE PICTURE WITHOUT BEING ABLE TO TELL WHETHER IT WAS RISING OR SETTING: BUT NOW I HAVE THE HAPPINESS TO KNOW IT IS THE RISING AND NOT THE SETTING SUN."

[*Curtain*]

THE BUILDING OF THE SHIP

"Build me straight, O worthy Master!
Stanch and strong, a goodly vessel,
That shall laugh at all disaster,
And with wave and whirlwind wrestle!"

* * * * *

Thou, too, sail on, O Ship of State!
Sail on, O Union, strong and great!
Humanity with all its fears,
With all the hopes of future years,
Is hanging breathless on thy fate!
We know what Master laid thy keel,
What Workmen wrought thy ribs of steel,
Who made each mast, and sail, and rope,
What anvils rang, what hammers beat
In what a forge and what a heat,
Were shaped the anchors of thy hope!
Fear not each sudden sound and shock,
'Tis of the wave and not the rock;
'Tis but the flapping of the sail,
And not a rent made by the gale!
In spite of rock and tempest's roar,
In spite of false lights on the shore,
Sail on, nor fear to breast the sea!
Our hearts, our hopes, are all with thee,
Our hearts, our hopes, our prayers, our tears,
Our faith triumphant o'er our fears,
Are all with thee,—are all with thee!

—*Henry Wadsworth Longfellow.*

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What fine spirit was shown by the members of the Constitutional Convention?

2. Why was it necessary to frame a Constitution? What were the weaknesses of the Confederation?

3. What were the chief resolutions submitted by Mr. Randolph? Of what state was he a delegate?

4. There were some things that caused considerable bitterness and debate. What were they?

5. What important part did Benjamin Franklin play during the Convention?

6. Why did Mr. Randolph think it was necessary to remedy the work of the authors of the Articles of Confederation?

7. Tell briefly how he proposed to improve upon their work through the series of fifteen resolutions which he had prepared.

8. What delegates distinguished themselves during the Convention? How did they distinguish themselves?

9. The Constitution was ratified by New York State at Poughkeepsie in July, 1788. The people of New York City constructed a huge float, mounted upon which was a full-rigged ship. The name of Hamilton was written on both sides of the float. Write a short composition showing why the people of New York City placed Hamilton's name there instead of the names of all three delegates from New York State. In what respects is the ship like the Constitution?

10. What accounted for the absence of Thomas Jefferson at the time of the framing of the Constitution?

11. Prepare ten questions on the Constitution that you would like the class to answer.

12. Memorize the lines of "The Building of the Ship."

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Read "The Building of the Ship" by Henry W. Longfellow. Why does Longfellow call his ship "Union"?

2. Compare the building of the ship with the building or framing of the Constitution.

3. Secure a copy of Scribner's Monthly, August, 1879, from the Library. Read what Mr. Noah Brooks has to say of his reading of "The Building of the Ship."

4. Consult your history and note three leading faults or weaknesses of the Articles of the Confederation. Did the framers of the Constitution remedy these defects? Explain.

5. Make an outline of the Constitution under the heads:

Legislative.
Executive.
Judicial.

6. Under the legislative department make an outline of the House of Representatives under the following heads:

Manner of election.
Term of office.
Qualification.
Appointment.
Speaker, the presiding officer.

7. Make a similar outline of the Senate.

8. Outline the other departments in the same manner.

9. The class may frame a constitution for a boys' club. Make it simple and keep in mind that the individual must always think of what is best for the group.

Dolly Madison

The Quaker Queen

CHARACTERS

*Dolly Madison	*William Preston
*Paul Jennings	*Washington Irving
*Lucy Cutts	*Paul Hamilton
*French John	*George Custis
*Anna Washington	Second Messenger
*Lucy Payne	*Magraw
*James Madison	*Henry Carroll
*Henry Clay	*Mr. Barker
*Elbridge Gerry	*James Monroe
*Mrs. Gerry	First Messenger
*Daniel Webster	*Sally Coles

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

ACT I

Place: Room in the White House, then the official residence of James Madison, President of the United States.
Time: January, 1812.

Dorothea Madison, usually called "Dolly," and her sister, Lucy Cutts, are seated at a table comparing a list of guests with the names on the written invitations.

Dolly Madison. They are all here,—poets, painters, and politicians,—Mr. Thomas Moore, Mr. Gilbert Stuart, Mr. Henry Clay, Mr. Randolph. I am afraid that there will be much discussion of our affairs with France and England. I dislike angry

argument. One should be calm in discussion. (*She rises and rings a bell. Paul Jennings appears.*)

PAUL (*bowing*). Yes, Mis' Madison.

DOLLY MADISON (*handing him the invitations*). Deliver these, Paul.

PAUL. Im'mejit, Mis' Madison. (*Bows and goes out.*)

LUCY CUTTS. What will thee wear at the leveé, Dolly?

DOLLY MADISON. Do not "thee" me, Lucy, or I will never have the courage to put on my buff colored velvet—

LUCY CUTTS. And the Paris turban with paradise plumes.

DOLLY MADISON. And my pearls. (*She laughs softly.*) Do you remember when we were tiny Quaker maids, that one day I wore the jewels that grandmother had secretly given me, in a bag, hidden under my dress, and then lost them in the woods on my way to school? (*There is a knock. The door opens and French John announces—*)

FRENCH JOHN. Mrs. Washington and Miss Lucy Payne.

(*Anna Washington and Lucy enter; the ladies greet each other affectionately and seat themselves, Lucy on a low stool by Dolly Madison.*)

ANNA WASHINGTON. At what were you two laughing?

DOLLY MADISON. Old times, my dear, and present changes. Lucy reminded me of our Quaker childhood, and the days in the Friends' School.

ANNA WASHINGTON (*laughs*). Mother used to sew our linen masks to our sunbonnets so that the sun

might not touch our faces. Even Mother, Friend as she was, had a little worldliness where her daughters were concerned.

LUCY PAYNE (*turning on her stool and looking at Dolly attentively*). You may thank Grandmother Payne for the best complexion in Washington. Peaches and cream!

ANNA WASHINGTON. 'Twas the one frivolity that our mother permitted herself, though I think she loved to look at pretty clothes. She would have sighed over our spangled head-dresses and rosetted slippers, but she would have smiled too.

LUCY CUTTS. Leveés! Country dances!! And ball gowns!!! (*She shakes her finger at Dolly Madison, Anna Washington, and Lucy Payne.*)

DOLLY MADISON (*with affected demureness*). I did but follow my dear husband's wishes when I put off my Quaker garb and habits.

LUCY PAYNE. I vow, Uncle James knew how to please you. (*They all laugh as James Madison enters the room.*)

JAMES MADISON (*bows*). Good afternoon, ladies. You sound merry. (*He drops into an armchair evidently kept for him beside the fire.*)

LUCY PAYNE. Uncle James, am I not sufficiently well grown and dignified to dance at the leveé? (*She puts out her feet and looks at them critically.*) I think they (*she wiggles her feet*) would look well in red-heeled slippers and diamond buckles.

JAMES MADISON. Perhaps. (*He smiles in a tired fashion and settles himself more comfortably in his chair.*)

DOLLY MADISON (*looking at him quickly*). You are tired, my husband. I'll send for some refreshment at once. (*She rises.*)

JAMES MADISON. No! No! My dear, a few minutes in your cheerful society will blow away cares of state, even though France and England seem to be vieing with each other to destroy our shipping and drive us into war. Congress has passed an embargo on all trade with France and England.

ANNA WASHINGTON. The poor merchants!

LUCY CUTTS. The prisons are full of debtors there, because of the action of England and France, and our own laws make it impossible for them to pay their debts.

DOLLY MADISON. France is as much to blame in this matter as England.

LUCY CUTTS. She has not "impressed" our seamen.

JAMES MADISON. The hot-heads in Congress are urging that I call out the army.

LUCY CUTTS and DOLLY MADISON. God forbid!

JAMES MADISON. Conditions are growing worse and worse.

FRENCH JOHN. Mr. Clay.

DOLLY MADISON. Welcome, Mr. Clay. (*Clay enters and bows.*)

JAMES MADISON. Sit here, Mr. Speaker. (*He motions him to a chair near his own. They speak in a low tone while Anna Washington and Lucy Cutts rise.*)

DOLLY MADISON. Can't you stay until Paul brings tea?

© Brown Bros.

DOLLY MADISON AS SHE APPEARED IN HER LATER YEARS

LUCY CUTTS. I must get home by tea time.

ANNA WASHINGTON. So must I. (*The gentlemen rise, there is a general bowing, and the two ladies exit.*)

DOLLY MADISON. The President has been telling us of the unfortunate condition of the country.

HENRY CLAY. Most unfortunate, Mrs. Madison. Our prisons are full of debtors ruined through no fault of their own but because our trade has been destroyed by England.

JAMES MADISON. France is as much to blame as England.

HENRY CLAY. France has never impressed our seamen. France has not boasted that no American vessel can sail from New York to Staten Island without the permission of the French navy.

JAMES MADISON. But France has seized our ships and sold their cargoes, or burned them at sea. She has accused us of basely submitting to England's insults. Let the United States tear up the Declaration of Independence and become again a part of England, or let her uphold her rights upon the seas, instead of submitting to England and attacking France.

HENRY CLAY. It is a bad business, Your Excellency. I am afraid that war is the only remedy.

DOLLY MADISON. A remedy worse than the disease. My Quaker blood rebels against war.

LUCY PAYNE. Uncle James, if we go to war with England will the leveé be held next Tuesday?

(*Dolly Madison laughs and nods smilingly to both gentlemen.*)

LUCY PAYNE. Please say I may go. (*She rises.*) I want to see you in your beautiful velvet gown and your new head-dress. Perhaps you can persuade the British and French ambassadors to make their navies leave our ships alone.

JAMES MADISON. Wise counsel. (*He turns to Mrs. Madison.*) I sometimes think that with your friendliness and tact you would be a better president than I am.

HENRY CLAY. "ALL THE WORLD LOVES MRS. MADISON."

DOLLY MADISON. "MRS. MADISON LOVES ALL THE WORLD."

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Ballroom in the White House.
Time: 1813.

Dolly Madison, the President, Lucy Cutts, Anna Washington, Lucy Payne, and other ladies and gentlemen stand in front of the mantel. The room is decorated with British flags taken from various vessels that have surrendered to the American navy. There are a number of men in naval uniform and some army officers present, for the ball is in honor of the naval victories. Servants move about among the guests offering trays of refreshments. One young man in uniform stands somewhat apart, evidently not acquainted with the other guests. There is a Virginia reel in progress, which just ends.

FRENCH JOHN. The Vice-President and Mrs. Gerry.

ELBRIDGE GERRY. 'Tis a monstrous gay scene, Madame.

(*Mrs. Gerry talks to the President and the ladies.*)

DOLLY MADISON. None too gay to do honor to our splendid navy.

MRS. GERRY (*turning to join in the conversation*). And to think that everybody thought a navy would be of no use, the war must be fought out on land.

FRENCH JOHN. Mr. Daniel Webster.

DANIEL WEBSTER (*bows*). Mr. President.

JAMES MADISON. It is a pleasure to welcome so fine an orator even though his speeches may be directed against my party.

DOLLY MADISON. "TUT, TUT, GENTLEMEN, THERE ARE NO PARTIES IN MY DRAWING ROOM; ALL ARE FRIENDS."

DANIEL WEBSTER. Madame, I am very proud to be called your friend. (*Turns and speaks to the other guests.*)

DOLLY MADISON. Lucy, (*she calls Lucy Payne, who comes up beside her*), who is the young man who is standing by himself, as though he were a stranger to all in the room?

LUCY PAYNE. I don't know, Aunt Dolly.

DOLLY MADISON. He resembles someone I know. What is his name?

LUCY PAYNE. Cousin Payne Todd called him Preston.

DOLLY MADISON. Preston. Now I know who he is. Come with me. (*Dolly and Lucy walk over to the silent, awkward young man.*)

DOLLY MADISON (*holding out her hand. Preston takes it awkwardly*). "ARE YOU WILLIAM CAMPBELL PRESTON, THE SON AND KINSMAN OF SALLY CAMPBELL? COME WITH ME, MY SON, FOR YOU ARE MY SON, AND I AM THE FIRST PERSON WHO EVER SAW YOU IN THIS WORLD." Lucy, see that Mr. Preston meets all of the young people.

(*The sound of a fiddle is heard.*)

LUCY PAYNE. Do you dance the Sir Roger de Coverley?

PRESTON. Yes, will you dance it with me?

(*While the young people are speaking, Dolly Madison walks back to the group by the mantel.*)

FRENCH JOHN. Mr. Washington Irving.

A SCENE SHOWING BOYS DRESSED FOR DOLLY MADISON'S BALL

DOLLY MADISON. How do you do, Mr. Irving? The gossips say that you are so busy writing history that you have no time for your friends.

WASHINGTON IRVING. Ah, Mrs. Madison, who can write history when the country is busy making history? These flags are more eloquent than any words of mine can be. Lawrence, Perry, Hull, Decatur, Stuart,—these are the historians.

DOLLY MADISON. The Secretary of the Navy is not here.

(*There is a commotion heard outside. The door is flung open. A naval officer carrying a British flag, and surrounded by gentlemen, enters the room. There are cheers and singing.*)

WASHINGTON IRVING. More history has been made.

(*The young man carrying the flag, Paul Hamilton, comes down the room followed by the gentlemen, while the ladies clap their hands. He stands in front of Dolly and the President.*)

PAUL HAMILTON. "COMMODORE DECATUR'S COMPLIMENTS, SIR. HE WISHES ME TO PRESENT TO YOU, AND TO THE COUNTRY THE FLAG OF THE MACEDONIAN, BRITISH FRIGATE CAPTURED OFF THE AZORES ON OCTOBER 25TH, AND NOW LYING AT NEWPORT."

(*The crowd shout three cheers for the Navy and for Decatur.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

SCENE I

Place: A room in the White House.
Time: August 23, 1814.

Dolly Madison looking anxiously out of the window. James Madison enters with a letter in his hand. Dolly goes hastily to him.

JAMES MADISON. This despatch has just come. The British have met our outposts at Old Field, not ten miles away, and have defeated them.

DOLLY MADISON. The only defenses are at Bladensburg and they are slight. By the crowds in the street with their carts full of valuables I know that some disaster must have occurred.

JAMES MADISON. The government clerks are packing the public books and documents and tomorrow the banks will send off their gold and silver to Winchester. I have just ended a cabinet meeting at the Navy Yard. Every able-bodied man in Washington is marching toward Bladensburg, whither the enemy is approaching. I must leave at once and join our forces.

DOLLY MADISON. I pray God that no such horrors may take place in Washington as occurred at Hampton.

JAMES MADISON. I dread leaving you, my dearest.

DOLLY MADISON. My place is here, as yours is at the front. Keep me informed of the progress of events. I will not leave until I find that I must go and take with me papers that are more precious than life itself.

JAMES MADISON. Good-bye, my precious wife. God protect you! (*Calls French John and Paul Jennings.*) Protect your mistress. I am going to join the forces. (*Both assert that they will.*)

DOLLY MADISON. And you—

(*Madison goes out, Dolly following him off the stage in farewell. She returns in a minute, stands by the window and watches him. The two servants go out slowly and close the door. There is a moment of silence when a knock is heard.*)

FRENCH JOHN. Mr. George Washington Parke Custis is calling.

DOLLY MADISON. Ask Mr. Custis to come up here.

(*French John goes out while Dolly busies herself at a desk arranging papers.*)

FRENCH JOHN. Mr. George Washington Parke Custis.

GEORGE CUSTIS. Mrs. Madison, I kiss your hand. (*He bends and kisses her hand.*)

DOLLY MADISON (*sits down and motions him to a chair*). You are come in troublous times, dear Mr. Custis; what may I do for you?

GEORGE CUSTIS. I am greatly concerned as to what may be the possible fate of Stuart's portrait of General Washington hanging on your dining room

wall if the British should capture Washington. They would revenge themselves for the action of our troops in burning towns in Canada.

DOLLY MADISON. I fear the worst. The British have threatened to capture the President and myself and show us to the King. (*She smiles at the implied though rather horrifying joke.*)

GEORGE CUSTIS. Unthinkable!

DOLLY MADISON. Rest assured that the precious portrait and all of the state papers that remain here will be my first thought,—they must never fall into the hands of the British.

GEORGE CUSTIS. Never, Madame. (*He rises and bows.*) I take my leave of you with many misgivings for the future. Remember that I am always under every circumstance at your service. Would it not be well to leave now with me?

DOLLY MADISON. Thank you for your hospitality, but you understand that it would not become the wife of the President to desert her post.

GEORGE CUSTIS. Then I must say good-bye, and hasten back to Arlington. (*He bows and goes out.*)

(*Dolly Madison gathers more papers together.*)

[*Curtain*]

SCENE II

Place: A room in the White House.

Time: August 24, 1814.

A door at the side leads into another room. There are windows at the back. The room is in disorder, boxes and trunks containing papers standing about. On a table by the window is a spy glass.

FRENCH JOHN (*his arms full of silver candlesticks, vases, shawls, a china punch bowl*). Which trunk will your ladyship let me put these into?

DOLLY MADISON. None of them, John. We can't afford to think of our own personal belongings. The government papers will fill the carriage. If it is possible to find a wagon, we will take what things we can,—the plate, of course,—but my care must be given to the cabinet papers, both public and private.

FRENCH JOHN. 'Tis a sin and a shame, Madame, if the British destroy this city.

DOLLY MADISON. Yes, it is a sin and a shame, but all men seem to do that in war. Our soldiers destroyed British towns in Canada. I see our guard has been withdrawn. That leaves only Magraw and you.

FRENCH JOHN. Madame, we will stay with you always. I think we could defend this house. Let me spike the cannon at the gate and lay a train of gunpowder so that if the British try to enter the house, they will be (*he makes an expressive gesture with his hands to signify blowing up and scattering*) blown up.

DOLLY MADISON (*smiles*). We can't do that, John, even though we are at war. (*She smiles again, but the smile fades quickly as a rumble of guns is heard.*) Cannon! (*Dolly picks up the spy glass and John leaves the room hastily. Dolly looks anxiously in all directions, then drops the glass and rushes to the door and opens it. She steps out into the hall, and her voice is heard saying*) Come up quickly. (*Two messengers covered with dust and dropping with fatigue follow her into the room.*) What news?

Collection of James F. Flood

THE WHITE HOUSE BEFORE IT WAS BURNED BY THE BRITISH IN 1814

(*The first messenger hands her a note. French John appears in the doorway.*)

SECOND MESSENGER. The President bids you seek safety with all haste. The enemy will enter Washington. There is no time to be lost.

DOLLY MADISON (*listening to the message and reading the note at the same time*). I cannot go while my husband is in danger. (*Then she notices the fatigue of the two messengers.*) John, see that these two friends are well cared for,—food, and as much rest as they can take.

FRENCH JOHN. Yes, Madame. (*John and the two messengers go out.*)

MAGRAW (*appears much excited*). A wagon and horses, ma'am,—Heaven sent them! We can save some of the valuables belonging to you and the master.

DOLLY MADISON. Load it with the plate and the things piled in the East Room, and bid the driver

take them to the Bank of Maryland. We can only hope that they get there and not into the hands of the British. (*Another loud roll.*) Cannon again—and closer! Hurry!

(*Magraw dashes out of the room. Dolly picks up the spy glass again and looks out of the window. There is a loud knock heard from downstairs. Dolly puts down the glass and goes to the door. Mr. Barker, Mr. de Peyster, and Mr. Carroll appear. Mr. Barker bows. Mr. Carroll comes in hastily and takes Mrs. Madison's hand.*)

HENRY CARROLL. You must go at once, dear friends!

DOLLY MADISON. But my husband!

HENRY CARROLL. I repeat there is no time to be lost; I see your carriage is waiting.

DOLLY MADISON. I have packed it full of state papers. The British will get neither the original draft of the Constitution nor the Declaration of Independence.

HENRY CARROLL. You have thought of everything; it is foolhardy to remain longer. Mr. Barker agrees with me, do you not?

DOLLY MADISON (*interrupting hastily*). Gentlemen (*turning to Mr. Barker and Mr. de Peyster*), I have a sacred trust for you. (*She goes out and calls.*) John! Magraw! (*The two servants appear.*) Get the Stuart portrait of President Washington and give it to Mr. Barker. Take it out of the frame if necessary.

HENRY CARROLL. But you lose precious time.

(*Mr. Barker leaves the room.*)

DOLLY MADISON. But I promised—the portrait must not be touched by enemy hands.

MR. BARKER (*John and Magraw appear with a large roll, presumably the portrait*). I will conceal this until it may be safely restored to its former position.

DOLLY MADISON. It is in good hands. (*She hastily puts on her bonnet, picks up a shawl and small bag. John and Magraw take two larger bags.*) Now, I will go!

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: The drawing room in the Octagon House, used as the residence of the President until the White House, which had been burned down in August, 1814, was rebuilt.

Time: February 4, 1815.

A fire is burning in the fireplace; beside the fire is a tea-table set. Paul Jennings brings in the tea. Dolly Madison arranges the tea service. President Madison and Secretary Monroe come in, talking. Mrs. Madison looks up and smiles.

DOLLY MADISON. Come close to the fire, and while you drink a cup of tea, drop affairs of state, I beg you.

JAMES MONROE. Good counsel, Mrs. Madison, but hard to follow in these troublous days. We have just had word that Decatur has been captured.

JAMES MADISON. Misfortunes gather thick about our government. The New England States at the Hartford Convention have threatened what is prac-

tically secession. The government is facing bankruptcy; every bank from Albany to Savannah has suspended specie payment.

JAMES MONROE. Half of Maine is in the possession of the enemy; unless Providence interferes Cockburn will capture Savannah; we have had no word from Jackson at New Orleans. The outlook is dark, very dark. (*He leans his head on his hand and stares into the fire.*)

DOLLY MADISON. Mr. Monroe, here is your tea. (*She hands him his cup and smiles again.*) Yes, the prospect is dark, but I cannot feel that God means this experiment to fail, else why would he have let us survive worse, much worse perils? Don't you remember the lines in young Mr. Key's "STAR-SPANGLED BANNER"—

"THEN CONQUER WE MUST, FOR OUR CAUSE IT IS JUST,
AND THIS BE OUR MOTTO, 'IN GOD IS OUR TRUST.'"

Mr. Madison, your tea. (*She hands him his cup.*) You know the old proverb: "Ill news travels fast"; that must mean that good news travels slowly. Who knows, perhaps our commissioners at Ghent have come to some agreement that you and Congress can accept. And as for Cockburn at Savannah, he hasn't taken it yet. Think of Perry on Lake Erie and McDonough on Lake Champlain, besides the other successes of our navy. I'm getting my best Paris turban ready to wear when the news comes of Jackson's victory over the British at New Orleans.

JAMES MONROE (*gallantly*). 'Tis a most becoming head-dress and suits your ladyship vastly.

JAMES MADISON. 'Tis the head that wears the turban that I most admire.

DOLLY MADISON. You both flatter me.

FRENCH JOHN (*knocks and opens the door. He bows to the three at the fireside, and addresses himself to the President*). Your Excellency, two messengers from General Jackson. (*The two messengers salute.*)

FIRST MESSENGER. General Jackson's compliments, Your Excellency. (*He hands the President some papers.*)

DOLLY MADISON (*impulsively to second messenger*). Do you bring good news?

SECOND MESSENGER. The best—our troops have defeated the British with a loss of only a handful of men.

JAMES MADISON. Here is a letter for you, my dear. (*Hands her a letter sealed in the old way with sealing wax.*)

LUCY CUTTS (*enters*). What news?

(*Dolly has broken the seal of her letter and reads the date and the first sentence of the letter. Then she turns to the end and reads.*) "Thomas B. Johnson"—from my old friend, the post-master of New Orleans. (*She then reads the following letter through.*)

"LETTER TO MRS. MADISON FROM THE POST-MASTER OF NEW ORLEANS, JANUARY 19, 1815.

MADAM: THE AMERICAN ARMY IN LOUISIANA HAS GAINED IMMORTAL GLORY. IT HAS MADE A DEFENSE AGAINST THE MOST VALIANT AND FORTUNATE TROOPS OF EUROPE. THE 8TH OF JANUARY WILL FORM AN EPOCH IN THE HISTORY OF THE REPUBLIC. IT WAS ON THE MORNING OF THAT DAY THE BRITISH ATTEMPTED

© Brown Bros.

THE SEA FIGHT BETWEEN THE CONSTITUTION AND THE GUERRIERE

TO STORM OUR LINES AND TO FORCE A WAY TO THE CITY AT THE POINT OF THE BAYONET. THEY WERE SUFFERED TO APPROACH WITHIN TWENTY YARDS OF OUR BATTERIES UNMOLESTED. AT THAT MOMENT A FIRE FROM OUR GUNS AND OUR MUSKETRY OPENED ON THEM WITH SUCH IRRESISTIBLE FORCE, THEY GAVE WAY AT ALL POINTS, FLYING IN THE UTMOST CONFUSION, LEAVING THE GROUND STREWN WITH THEIR DEAD AND DYING. YOU MAY CONCEIVE, MADAM, WHAT A SPECTACLE OF CARNAGE MUST HAVE MET THE EYE WHEN YOU LEARN THAT IN KILLED, WOUNDED, AND MISSING, THE ENEMY EXCEEDED TWO THOUSAND — THEIR COMMANDER AND CHIEF KILLED.

12 O'CLOCK. INTELLIGENCE HAS AT THIS MOMENT BEEN RECEIVED FROM GENERAL JACKSON THAT THE

BRITISH HAVE EVACUATED THE COUNTRY. THE COUNTRY IS SAVED, THE ENEMY VANQUISHED, AND HARDLY A WIDOW OR ORPHAN WHOSE TEARS DAMP THE GENERAL JOY. PERMIT ME TO OFFER YOU MY CONGRATULATIONS IN THIS TERMINATION OF OUR TRIALS AND TRIBULATIONS AND TO ASSURE YOU OF THE EVERLASTING RESPECT OF

YOUR OBEDIENT AND ADMIRING SERVANT,
THOMAS B. JOHNSON."

JAMES MADISON. The tide has turned. This victory should influence the decision of the council who are discussing the peace terms at Ghent.

[*Curtain*]

ACT V

Place: The Drawing Room in the Octagon House.
Time: Evening of Monday, February 13, 1815.

JAMES MADISON. There are rumors that Henry Carroll, secretary to the peace commissioners, has landed at New York, and that he brings a treaty with him.

DOLLY MADISON. To-morrow is February 14th. 'Twould be a monstrous fine valentine for the nation. (*Shouts are heard outside.*) What does that shouting mean?

JAMES MADISON (*rises and goes to the window*). Two gentlemen followed by a crowd. (*A loud knock sounds. More shouts of "Peace!"*)

FRENCH JOHN. The secretary of state and Mr. Carroll. (*Mr. Monroe and Mr. Carroll enter in great excitement.*)

JAMES MONROE. Mr. Carroll brings the treaty of peace.

DOLLY MADISON. God be praised!

HENRY CARROLL. The Commissioners have entrusted me with this for Your Excellency! (*Hands him a document. The President and Dolly Madison shake hands with Mr. Carroll.*)

DOLLY MADISON. Then the war is really over?

HENRY CARROLL. The British and American Commissioners signed the treaty on Christmas Eve.

DOLLY MADISON. Good tidings of great joy! (*The shouts outside grow louder, and there is another loud knock. Paul Jennings and French John stand looking in the door. When the knock is heard, French John disappears. Dolly turns to Paul.*) Paul, set lighted candles in all of the windows so that all the people may know that peace has come. (*French John enters followed by two gentlemen and a lady. The lady rushes forward and takes Dolly's hand.*)

SALLY COLES. Is it really peace?

FRENCH JOHN. Mr. Webster,—Mr. Clay.

JAMES MADISON. Gentlemen, you are most welcome on this happy occasion.

DOLLY MADISON. Two friendly enemies.

HENRY CLAY. We can forget party differences on this happy occasion.

DANIEL WEBSTER. To-night there are neither Federalists nor Republicans,—we are all Americans.

(*A crowd of servants have gradually gathered in the doorway. A fat negro cook rings a large dinner bell and shouts "Peace." Two of the servants bring in candles and place them in the windows. At that there is a*

louder shout. Paul Jennings comes in with his fiddle, playing the President's March—"HAIL! COLUMBIA!" *There is conversation and laughter as the old colored man followed by the other servants march about.*)

DOLLY MADISON. Paul! Paul! (*The music and marching stop.*) Play the "STAR-SPANGLED BANNER." (*The company shout, "The Star-Spangled Banner!" Dolly rushes to the window and opens it. The President joins her. Just then the opening notes of the national anthem are heard, and the crowd outside begins to sing. Inside of the room they take up the words—"O, thus be it ever, when freemen shall stand—."* The *verse is sung through and the curtain falls.*)

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. Describe the dress of a little Quaker girl. How did it differ from that of a girl of today?
2. What were the causes of the war with England in 1812?
3. Why was France as well as England destroying American shipping at this time?
4. What war was now raging in Europe? What had brought it about?
5. Who was the ruler of France at this time? What were his ambitions?
6. What is told us of Dolly Madison in Act II?
7. Who was Daniel Webster? In what way had he become famous?
8. Who was Washington Irving? Of what famous book was he author?
9. How did Dolly Madison outwit the British before the White House was burned?
10. Why did the English destroy the White House? Where did the President live until it was rebuilt?
11. Make a list of the victories which were won over the British during this war.

12. How did news of the victory at New Orleans first come to the President?

13. Why was there so much joy when news of peace came through?

14. In what way did General Jackson become famous after the battle of New Orleans?

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Debate—RESOLVED that France damaged American commerce previous to the war of 1812 as much as did England.

2. Give a five minute talk on Napoleon's influence on American History.

3. Tell the story of the victory at New Orleans as though you were seeing it as a moving picture.

4. Dress a paper doll as you think any of the women characters in the play would be dressed.

5. In 1814, the New England States threatened to secede from the Union. Find out what states later followed this example and under what conditions.

6. Give a five minute talk on State Sovereignty *versus* Federal Control.

7. Select two dances that might be used in the Second Act instead of the ones suggested.

8. Imagine yourself a seaman in Captain Hull's ship who has been impressed into the British Navy. Tell the story of the attack on Fort McHenry to your brother after you have made your escape by jumping into the bay and swimming ashore.

9. Suggest a patriotic song that might be sung at the end of the Fifth Act instead of the "Star Spangled Banner."

10. Find any poems that have to do with this period.

11. Show by means of diagrams three ways in which a sailing ship might take advantage of the wind in a naval battle in the War of 1812-1814.

The Lone Star State

CHARACTERS

First Texan	Second Officer
Mexican Soldier	Scout
*General Houston	*Santa Anna
*Colonel Austin	A Soldier
Mr. Archer	Another Soldier
Henry Smith	Judge Thompson
First Soldier	Colonel Mcleod
Second Soldier	Colonel Wells
Smith, A Messenger	President Jones
Horseman	Judge Hand
Orderly	Colonel Fisher
First Officer	Indian Chief
Reporter	Matilda Lockhart

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

ACT I

Place: An open square in San Felipe de Austin.
Time: November, 1835.

A crowd of angry Texans is gathered about, carrying muskets and talking in indignant tones.

First Texan (*standing on a box*). Hear me, fellow citizens, hear me! (*The crowd becomes silent.*) This condition of affairs in Texas is not to be borne any longer—at least by fair-minded Texans.

Mexican Soldier. What's the matter with "affairs" as you call them?

Crowd. Everything!

FIRST TEXAN. I will tell you what's the matter. By the edict of Mexico City, Texas and Coahuila are one province. By all the laws of nature and man they ought to be two. Coahuila is Mexican, and Texas is populated by Texans who are mostly from the United States. Texans and Mexicans can never agree.

MEXICAN SOLDIER. They can as long as the Mexicans rule.

CROWD. Mexicans rule! Mexicans misrule is nearer the truth.

FIRST TEXAN. Mexico can't rule itself. To-day you have a President and next week you have another. One party is continually fighting another.

CROWD. And we are the sufferers.

MEXICAN SOLDIER. You the sufferers! Why you more than the Mexicans?

FIRST TEXAN. I say we are the sufferers. Mexico City is unfair to Texas. Suppose a Texan and a Mexican each has a claim to the same land and they appeal to the Mexican government, who always gets it?

CROWD. The Mexican!

FIRST TEXAN. In everything the Mexican is favored—A Texan can't rise in the army, settlers from the United States can't come into Texas for fear that Texas will become so powerful that it will want to break away from Mexico. Not a Texan is represented in the government—why? Because Santa Anna favors Mexicans.

CROWD. We won't stand it!

MEXICAN SOLDIER. You won't stand it! You will have to stand it. If you rebel, Santa Anna will send

an army down here and wipe you rebels off the face of the earth.

FIRST TEXAN. We are not afraid of Santa Anna and all of Mexico.

CROWD. Seize that soldier. Get him!

(*The crowd surrounds the soldier and seizes him. Enter Sam Houston, Archer, and Colonel Austin.*)

HOUSTON. What's the row, men, what's the row?

FIRST TEXAN. This Mexican soldier needs to be cured of his boasting. Give him a bath in the river, men, throw him in.

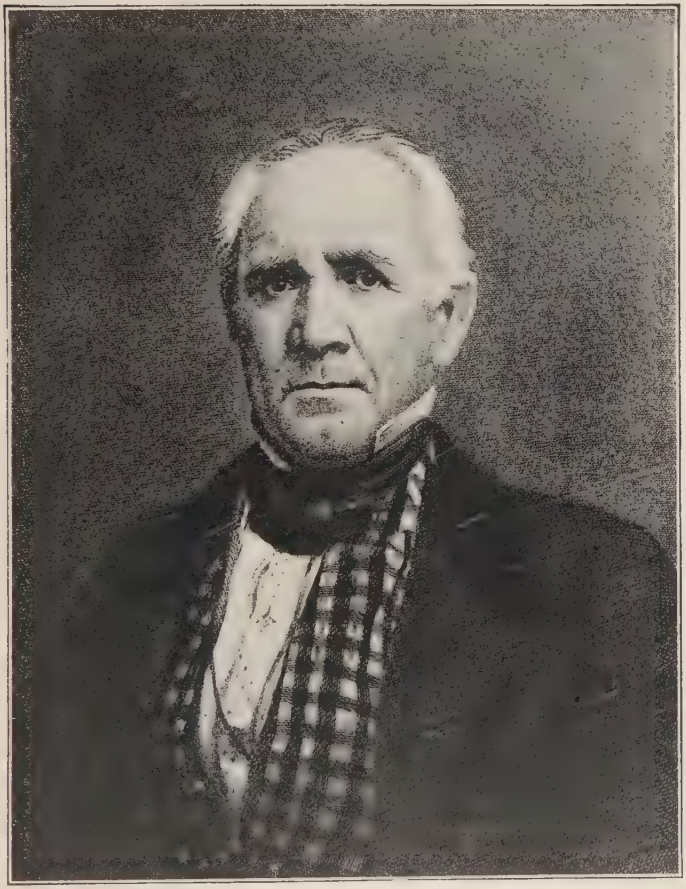
HOUSTON. No, men, let him go. We have more important work to do than to give the Mexican a bath, much as he may need it. Let him go. (*The crowd opens and frees the Mexican soldier, who picks up his musket and leaves.*) Now, friends, we must settle some important things to-night. But before we proceed I want you to hear Colonel Austin.

(*Colonel Austin stands on the box, and the crowd presses closer to hear him.*)

AUSTIN. I haven't much to say. You sent me to Mexico City to ask Santa Anna if he would secure the separation of Coahuila and Texas and give us a chance to govern ourselves. Santa Anna kept me waiting for four months. I gained nothing. On my way home I was seized by the Mexican Government and sent back to Mexico City. Here I was thrown into a dark, dirty dungeon and made to stay there for almost a year.

CROWD. It's an outrage! Mexico shall pay.

HOUSTON. Mexico City has insulted us in another way. Santa Anna has recently issued an order to all the inhabitants of Texas to surrender their arms.



GENERAL SAM HOUSTON, THE FAMOUS TEXAN PATRIOT

This was done in some places, and what was the result? The Indians found out the settlers were without means of defense, so they fell upon them and wiped whole families out of existence. The Mexican

Government has done nothing to stop these outrages.

FIRST TEXAN. I for one will shoot the Mexican official who tries to take my gun away.

CROWD. So will we!

HOUSTON. Let's keep cool, let's keep cool.

ARCHER. War with Mexico has got to come. We have already stormed and taken Goliad. We have fought the Mexican soldiers at Conception. War must come. Why not now?

(*Enter Henry Smith.*)

HENRY SMITH. Tell me, friends, is this an indignation meeting?

HOUSTON. Yes, Smith, against Mexico.

ARCHER. We can never be reconciled to Mexico, can we friends?

CROWD. Never! Never!

ARCHER. Then we want leaders of our own.

HOUSTON. But first let's send the alarm throughout Texas! Let's rouse all the citizens to arms. We must all unite in any undertaking.

ARCHER. Who will be a messenger to ride through the state?

CROWD. I! I! I!

ARCHER. All of you. That's good! Now for the message. Tell the people we want a governor. Whom do we want?

CROWD. Smith! Henry Smith!

ARCHER (*to Smith*). Would you accept?

SMITH. Friends, I'll accept any duty you choose for me.

ARCHER. Tell our settlers Smith is the man for governor. Now we want a general for our army.

CROWD. Houston's the man! Sam Houston!

ARCHER. I know you're right there, too, boys. Tell the settlers Houston's the man to lead the army. You will serve, won't you, Houston?

HOUSTON. I'll serve Texas with my whole heart and strength.

CROWD. Bravo! Bravo!

AUSTIN. What about the United States? Do you think the people over there will sympathize with our struggle?

FIRST TEXAN. They ought to. They had a bitter struggle for independence themselves. I move we send delegates to Washington to see how the American statesmen feel about our independence, to get their sympathy, and, what's more to our purpose, to get all the help and money we can for our cause. You, Archer, and Mr. Austin ought to go.

ARCHER. Certainly we will act as commissioners to the United States, won't we, Colonel?

AUSTIN. We will.

HOUSTON. Our time is short. Our riders ought to start out and warn the people to get ready, else Santa Anna will be upon us before we can get our army together.

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Washington on the Brazos.
Time: March, 1836.

A group of Texan soldiers are standing about talking in earnest tones.

FIRST SOLDIER. Has General Houston arrived?

SECOND SOLDIER. Not yet, but we expect him any minute.

FIRST SOLDIER. How is the recruiting business getting on?

SECOND SOLDIER. Not very well. We have three hundred twenty trained soldiers each with a musket and six hundred men who are willing to fight, but who have no guns.

FIRST SOLDIER. Texas has no money to buy guns either.

SECOND SOLDIER. Texas is in bankruptcy. General Houston has ordered two cannon from the United States, and where the money is coming from to pay for them is more than I know.

FIRST SOLDIER. This is a terrible state of affairs. Santa Anna is only a hundred miles away too, with an army of five thousand men.

SECOND SOLDIER. We will have to keep retreating forever, for it will be impossible to make a stand against an army of five thousand, even though they are only Mexicans.

(*Enter General Houston.*)

HOUSTON. Then we will attempt the impossible, for we are going to make a stand against the Dons and that soon.

SOLDIERS. Bravo, General! We are with you.

HOUSTON. Then be ready, men, at an hour's notice to be on the march.

(*Enter Smith, a messenger.*)

SMITH. A message for you, General, from Travis at the Alamo.

ALL. Are they holding out?

SMITH. They were when I left, but that was two weeks ago. I have had to dodge the Mexicans and lie in hiding for over a week. I left the Alamo on March 4. Then the little band was nearly starving —the Spaniards are everywhere. They are enraged because Travis and his band are holding out so long. If the Alamo does fall, they will show no mercy to the "rebels" as they call us.

HOUSTON. News of the soldiers at the Alamo. I'll read what Travis says.

"I FEEL CONFIDENT THAT THE DETERMINED SPIRIT AND DESPERATE COURAGE HERETOFORE EXHIBITED BY MY MEN WILL NOT FAIL THEM IN THE LAST STRUGGLE. AND THOUGH THEY MAY BE SACRIFICED TO THE VENGEANCE OF THE ENEMY, THE VICTORY WILL COST THAT ENEMY SO DEAR THAT IT WILL BE WORSE THAN A DEFEAT. THE BLOOD-RED BANNER WAVES OVER THE CHURCH IN BUXAR, AND IN THE CAMP ABOVE US IN TOKEN THAT THE WAR IS ONE OF VENGEANCE AGAINST REBELS. THESE THREATS HAVE NO INFLUENCE UPON MY MEN, BUT TO MAKE ALL FIGHT WITH DESPERATION, AND WITH THE HIGH SOULED COURAGE WHICH CHARACTERIZES THE PATRIOT WHO IS WILLING TO DIE IN DEFENCE OF HIS COUNTRY AND TEXAS. VICTORY OR DEATH."

—TRAVIS

FIRST SOLDIER. Let's march at once to their relief, General.

HOUSTON Be ready to leave in an hour, men. Pack your knapsacks and carry rations for a week. Sound the bugle, and call all to the colors. Tell each soldier we are going to the Alamo.

ALL. To the Alamo! To the Alamo!

(*Enter Horseman, dismounting hurriedly.*)

HORSEMAN. Where are you going, men?

ALL. To the Alamo!

HORSEMAN. Too late! The Alamo has fallen!

(*The soldiers gather about the excited Horseman in shocked silence.*)

HOUSTON. Were any of our soldiers spared?

HORSEMAN. No, General, not one.

(*There are murmurs of both anger and grief.*)

HOUSTON. Tell us about it.

HORSEMAN. The Spaniards were maddened by the stubborn resistance of the men and were twice repulsed when they tried to storm the walls. On March 6 they began bombarding the walls. They drew up a large cannon and battered a hole in the wall large enough for several men to get through at once. Then they rushed forward by the hundred. Fully two thousand men charged forward and we had only one hundred and eighty-four to defend the walls. David Crockett and his men defended one wall and Colonel Travis the other. They shot the Mexicans down as fast as they poured in through the wall, but our brave soldiers were outnumbered. When their guns were emptied, they used them as clubs. Mrs. Dickenson said that David Crockett knocked down seven Mexicans with his rifle butt before he was shot. Captain Bowie was lying in his bed dying when Santa Anna entered and put an end to him. Lieutenant Dickenson was trying to escape with his little son on his shoulder when they

THE ALAMO, AN HISTORIC OLD MISSION HOUSE AT SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS

shot him, too. Travis was shot while defending the walls. Those unfortunates who were captured alive were lined up and shot, shot like dogs, sir.

HOUSTON. Horrible. The Mexicans must be adequately punished for this.

SOLDIERS. They shall pay for it.

HOUSTON. Men, we have all heard of this horrible deed, and we know the men we must defend ourselves against. Report at camp. We have no time to lose. The Mexicans are now less than one hundred miles away.

HORSEMAN. When we meet them, don't forget the Alamo.

SOLDIERS. Aye! we'll remember the Alamo.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: Camp of General Houston near San Jacinto.

Time: April, 1836, the day after the battle of San Jacinto.

General Houston, wounded, is sitting under a tree and two of his officers are near him. Enter Orderly.

ORDERLY (*saluting*). There's an American reporter from the United States. General, who would like an interview.

HOUSTON. Show him in. (*Orderly salutes and withdraws.*) We are always glad to see anybody who hails from the United States.

FIRST OFFICER. I guess the reporter wants some first hand news, General.

(*Enter Orderly followed by the reporter.*)

REPORTER. Ah, General, I thank you for your kindness in granting me an interview. I was sent here from Washington to report war news. I'm in luck. The folks up home will rejoice when they hear of your victory at San Jacinto.

HOUSTON. The people in the United States are in sympathy with us, then?

REPORTER. That's it exactly, sir.

HOUSTON (*to his officers*). Tell him about it, boys.

FIRST OFFICER. Well, you see, Santa Anna kept advancing toward us with a much larger army, so—

REPORTER (*taking notes*). So the General kept retreating with his smaller army.

FIRST OFFICER. We retreated for over a month—we all the while gathering recruits and Santa Anna continually scattering his troops.

REPORTER. A stroke of strategy.

FIRST OFFICER. By and by we stopped retreating. Then, we turned quickly and caught Santa Anna at San Jacinto. Santa Anna's position was weak. On the night before the battle he pitched his camp on the edge of a swamp near the river. The river was to the right and the swamp behind him, a very weak position.

REPORTER (*writing*). River to the right, and swamp behind him.

SECOND OFFICER. Exactly. Don't forget the twin sisters, partner.

FIRST OFFICER. The twin sisters are our only two cannon, bought from the United States. They did the work.

REPORTER. The twin sisters, made in the U. S. A., did good work.

FIRST OFFICER. We marched stealthily to the edge of the woods and watched the enemy. We saw the Mexicans had stacked their arms and were taking their siesta. They were not expecting us. Then one of our soldiers rushed up to us and told General Houston he had obeyed orders and cut the bridge behind us.

REPORTER. May I ask why you had the bridge cut, General?

HOUSTON. Certainly. It was a fight to the finish, sir. We expected no mercy from Santa Anna. We knew that if we did not completely destroy him,

he would turn on us and capture us. Besides, men always fight better when they know there is no retreat.

REPORTER. I thought so.

FIRST OFFICER. Our soldiers knew it was victory or death and were waiting for the command to attack. The General gave the order, and the "twin sisters" spoke. We shouted, "Remember the Alamo! Remember Goliad!" We were upon them before they knew it. They couldn't reach their stacked guns in time, and you ought to have seen them scatter. We chased them into the river and the swamps. We killed about seven hundred of the Mexicans and captured as many more.

HOUSTON. I suspect that those we did not capture are still running toward the Rio Grande.

REPORTER. Good idea, General, I'll just sketch for our paper, a Mexican on the run to the Rio Grande.

FIRST OFFICER. That would be fine!

SECOND OFFICER. Unfortunately Santa Anna himself escaped.

REPORTER. That is too bad. He is disliked in the United States. Nobody has the least bit of respect for him after he shot the defenders of the Alamo.

SECOND OFFICER. The defenders of the Alamo for the most part came from the United States. They were nearly all Americans.

(*Noise of shuffling, struggling, and loud voiced threats off stage. Enter Orderly quickly.*)

ORDERLY. We have captured Santa Anna, sir, and our men threaten to shoot him even before he has been brought before you.

© Brown Bros.

SANTA ANNA, PRESIDENT OF MEXICO, TAKEN PRISONER AND BROUGHT BEFORE GENERAL HOUSTON

HOUSTON (*to First and Second Officers*). Order him to be brought to me at once and unharmed.

(*First and Second Officers salute and exit hurriedly.*)

REPORTER. I thank you for your interview, General.

HOUSTON. Don't go. Stay, and you may see the great Santa Anna, President of Mexico.

REPORTER. I am in luck to-day.

(*Enter a scout, who salutes.*)

SCOUT. We have captured Santa Anna, sir.

HOUSTON. Very good, sir. How did you do it?

SCOUT. Santa Anna disguised himself as a tramp —a pair of homespun trousers and a ragged shirt— It must have been this disguise that got him past

our lines safely. Some of us were suspicious, so we followed him through swamps and over creeks. He came to a hut. We surrounded the hut and captured him.

REPORTER. That's a good press story.

(*Enter First and Second Officers with Santa Anna. Soldiers follow.*)

SANTA ANNA. Have I the honor to be in the presence of the great General Houston?

HOUSTON. I am Sam Houston. Have a seat on that box.

SANTA ANNA. I must apologize for coming before you in this costume. It was borrowed as a disguise. I am in truth Santa Anna, President of the Mexican Republic.

SOLDIERS. A coward and a murderer!

SANTA ANNA. "YOU MAY CONSIDER YOURSELF OF NO COMMON DESTINY, FOR YOU HAVE CONQUERED THE NAPOLEON OF THE WEST, AND IT REMAINS FOR YOU TO BE GENEROUS TO THE VANQUISHED FOE."

REPORTER. "Napoleon of the West" in rags on a soap-box. Fine story!

HOUSTON. "YOU SHOULD HAVE CONSIDERED THOSE SENTIMENTS AT THE ALAMO AND AT GOLIAD."

SANTA ANNA. "MY ORDERS FROM THE GOVERNMENT AT MEXICO CITY DIRECTED ME TO TREAT THE TEXAN INSURGENTS AS PIRATES."

HOUSTON. You are the Director. You devised the law.

SANTA ANNA. "I HAVE AN UNDER GENERAL, GENERAL URREA. HE OVERSTEPPED HIS AUTHORITY

WHEN HE SHOT THE PRISONERS AT GOLIAD. I'LL HAVE HIM HANGED!"

SOLDIERS. He's trying to shift the blame, General.

REPORTER. Exactly!

HOUSTON. The unfortunates in the Alamo were shot by your order, Santa Anna, and you know it.

SOLDIERS. Aye, and we know it, General. Give him to us. We'll finish him.

HOUSTON. Stand back, men, and keep cool. (*Men fall back.*)

SANTA ANNA. I claim to be a prisoner of war. Don't send me out there. Your men may assassinate me.

HOUSTON. That's just what you deserve!

SOLDIERS. Going to let us shoot him, General?

HOUSTON (*to First and Second Officers*). Take him into my tent and watch him well.

(*The two soldiers exeunt with Santa Anna.*)

SOLDIERS. Are you going to let us shoot him, General?

HOUSTON. No, boys, I have other plans.

SOLDIERS. Come on, boys, let's raid the tent and riddle that Mexican with bullets.

HOUSTON. Stand back, boys, and listen to reason —what good will it do you to shoot Santa Anna?

SOLDIERS. Remember the Alamo and Goliad!

HOUSTON. I will never forget it, boys, but Santa Anna is worth more to us alive than dead. If we spare Santa Anna, he will go back, and he and his rival will be fighting each other to see who will be President of Mexico. Mexico will then be so divided, and the Mexicans will be so busy fighting among themselves, that they will be glad to leave us alone.

A SOLDIER. You're right, General.

ANOTHER SOLDIER. You're right, but I'd give a good deal to have the pleasure of shooting him.

HOUSTON. Besides that, Santa Anna is going to acknowledge the independence of Texas before I let him go, and then I am going to send him to Washington to tell the President that as far as he and Mexico are concerned, we are a free and independent State.

REPORTER. A great idea.

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: The Fight in the Council House at San Jacinto.
Time: March, 1840.

Judge Thompson and Colonel McLeod are seated in conversation.

THOMPSON. Those Indians are at their thieving and plundering again.

MCLEOD. Even while we are negotiating peace with them?

THOMPSON. Yes.

MCLEOD. That's downright arrogant of them.

THOMPSON. They're not to be trusted—these Comanches.

MCLEOD. Sam Houston is about the only man I know of who can keep our Indians peaceful—I wish he were here now.

THOMPSON. According to our agreement, the Indians are to return all the white captives here and unharmed before the week is out.

McLEOD. Do you think they will keep that promise?

THOMPSON. If they don't, we will send the militia after them.

(*Enter Colonel Wells.*)

WELLS. Two Indian runners have come in with the news that a large party of Indians are on their way here to the council to keep their agreement. There are a dozen chiefs, about twenty-five warriors, and several women and children.

THOMPSON. And the white prisoners they are going to bring here and free?

WELLS. They have brought only one, a little girl.

McLEOD. One? That's strange. They promised to bring all, and there must be at least a dozen. Why are they keeping them from us?

WELLS. They want a higher ransom.

McLEOD. But according to our agreement, they promised to bring all their captives.

THOMPSON. Colonel Wells, I fear treachery on the part of the Indians who are coming to the council. Get your soldiers together. Station some in the hall and others about the grounds. Have them ready to enter this room in a few seconds if we need them.

WELLS. All right, Judge, we will be ready.

McLEOD. They are coming now, Colonel Wells. See, the whole tribe seems to be approaching.

THOMPSON. No time to waste, Colonel.

(*Exit Colonel Wells hurriedly. Enter Judge Hand carrying a paper, and Colonel Fisher.*)

HAND. We have the treaty all ready for the chiefs to sign.

THOMPSON. Have you an Indian interpreter to read it to them?

FISHER. Yes, he is coming with the tribe.

(*Enter twelve Indian chiefs, followed by other warriors, squaws, and children. The chiefs pass in dignified silence to the platform and sit. The warriors stand about with folded arms.*)

THOMPSON. My brothers are welcome. The treaty is ready to be signed by the white and the red brothers.

INDIAN CHIEF. My young chief, him speak English—him read what treaty says—

MCLEOD. But first, where are the captives you have brought to us?

INDIAN CHIEF. One captive—little white girl—she here—see?

(*All turn and see a little white girl.*)

THOMPSON. Where are the others?

INDIAN CHIEF. No others—have only one—other pale face captured by other tribes.

THOMPSON (*to little girl*). What is your name, little girl?

MATILDA. Matilda Lockhart.

THOMPSON. You were captured by these Indians?

MATILDA. Yes, sir.

THOMPSON. You were taken to their camp?

MATILDA. Yes, sir.

THOMPSON. Did you see any more white prisoners in the same camp?

MATILDA. Yes, sir.

THOMPSON. How many?

MATILDA. About a dozen.

McLEOD. You see, chief, you made a mistake. You didn't fulfill your part of the treaty. You should have brought all the prisoners.

INDIAN CHIEF. Only one prisoner—no more. (*A silence. Thompson nods to Colonel Wells, who speaks to his soldiers at the door.*) What you say?

THOMPSON. I say you lie. (*Indians jump to their feet and face Thompson angrily.*) I say you lie. And you chiefs send your warriors back to get the rest of the prisoners.

INDIAN CHIEF. No other white prisoner.

(*Texan soldiers file into the room and stand guard near both doors.*)

THOMPSON. Every chief here will be held captive till you surrender all your white prisoners to us. Wells, cover every Indian here.

(*One Indian chief jumps toward the door and stabbing the guard, tries to pass. The Texans open fire and many braves fall. There is noise of shouting and shooting. Soon all the Indians are captured.*)

THOMPSON (*to Indian Chief who has his hands bound*). The next time you make a promise, keep it.

[*Curtain*]

ACT V

Place: In front of the Capitol, Austin, Texas.
Time: 1845. The annexation of Texas.

A crowd of citizens is gathered around the Capitol. Colonel McLeod is speaking with citizens.

COLONEL McLEOD. Yes, to-day is a great day for Texas. It's a day we have been looking for for ten

THE FLAGS OF TEXAS

years. Here comes General Houston. Good day, General, I see you are about, looking cheerful and happy.

HOUSTON. It's a day both of us have been working and fighting for. To-day the Lone Star of Texas will be hauled down, and the Stars and Stripes run up.

MCLEOD. How did we happen to get that lone star in our flag, General? Is it your design?

HOUSTON. No. It is often said that President Smith had to sign a treaty. He was asked to affix the seal of Texas. Smith was at a loss as to what to do. He happened to glance at the brass buttons on his coat. His buttons each had a five-pointed star surrounded by an oak wreath. He cut off a button, dipped it in the hot wax, and sealed the treaty.

MCLEOD. So that is where the lone star came from. Now that we are about to enter the Union, we will become one of the many stars. I hear that you are the first senator from Texas to the United States.

HOUSTON. Yes, the people are sending me to Washington.

(*The crowd begins to press closer to the Capitol. President Jones appears with J. Pinckney Henderson, the new Governor. The crowd cheers them.*)

PRESIDENT JONES. THE LONE STAR STATE OF TEXAS WHICH TEN YEARS SINCE AROSE AMID CLOUDS OVER THE FIELDS OF CARNAGE OBSCURING SUCH FOR A WHILE, HAS PASSED ON AND BECOME FIXED IN THE GLORIOUS CONSTELLATION WHICH ALL FREE MEN AND LOVERS OF FREEDOM MUST REVERENCE AND ADORE—THE AMERICAN UNION. BLENDING ITS RAYS WITH ITS SISTER STATES, MAY IT CONTINUE TO SHINE. MAY THE UNION BE PERPETUAL AND MAY IT BE THE MEANS OF CONFERRING BENEFITS AND BLESSINGS UPON ALL THE PEOPLE OF THE STATES, IS MY PRAYER. THE FIRST ACT IN THE GREAT DRAMA IS PERFORMED. THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS IS NO MORE.

(*The crowd stands silent and reverent as the Flag of the Republic is lowered and the United States Flag is raised.*)

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What discontent prevailed in Texas when the Mexicans were in control of the government?
2. What happened at the Alamo?
3. Name the chief battles fought during the war, the generals involved on each side, and the result of the battles.
4. Depict the character of Santa Anna as you see it from his interview with General Houston.
5. Why was Texas called "The Lone Star State"?
6. Why did the people of the North take so little interest in the admission of Texas into the Union? Why did the South want Texas admitted to the Union?
7. Santa Anna called himself the "Napoleon of the West." Who was the Napoleon Santa Anna had in mind when he so named himself?

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Before this play is read in class a map may be sketched on the blackboard showing Texas, the part of Mexico south of the Rio Grande and the disputed territory.

2. Mark in on the map San Jacinto, the Nusces River, Washington on the Brazos, Austin, the Alamo.

3. In Act Two Colonel Travis at the Alamo writes to General Houston. His last words are "Liberty or Death." Consult history books and make a list of all patriotic slogans you can find. Write after them the name of the patriot who said them.

4. The Texan soldiers wanted to shoot Santa Anna. General Houston refused to allow them to do so. Choose three pupils on each side to debate the question as to whether or not General Houston did the right thing.

5. In Act Three a reporter from the United States is given an interview by General Houston. Read that act through again. Imagine you are the reporter and write a report of the interview for your school paper.

The Tie That Binds

A Romance of Transportation in the United States

CHARACTERS

Innkeeper	*Eleazer Lord	*Mark Hopkins
Hostess	*Mrs. Pierson	Sam
Stable Boy	Elderly Lady	*Theodore Judah
Gentleman	Elderly Gentleman	*Charles Crocker
Lady	Young Lady	*George Crocker
Judge	*Mr. Pierson	*Leland Stanford
Merchant	Young Gentleman	Michael Shay
Landlord	First Voice	*Mrs. Strowbridge
Mail Carrier	Second Voice	*General Dodge
Stage Driver	Third Voice	*Supt. Reed
Engineer	Engineer	Mr. Benton
Conductor	*C. P. Huntington	*John R. Gillies

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

ACT I*

Place: A Room in an Inn on a Turnpike.
Time: 1831.

The room has a low ceiling crossed by beams. The floor is neatly sanded. There are bright pewter mugs on the two long oak tables that are set at the side of the room. At the left is a great fireplace with benches on either side. In the fireplace there is a crane from which pots hang on hooks over the fire of logs that blazes on the

*Act One has been invented from descriptions of the old stage coach and from intimate knowledge of various inns in New England and New York, especially the Wayside Inn, Keeler's Inn at Ridgefield, and an old inn at Dover Plains, New York. Act Two was written from descriptions given by several authorities consulted.

andirons below. There are stout-backed, slat-bottomed chairs at the tables, and around the room. A Dutch door opens out-of-doors at the back; a door at the right leads into another room. The room is lighted by the fire and a whale oil lamp set on one of the tables, for the time is late afternoon of a stormy March day in 1831.

INNKEEPER. 'Tis likely that the post will not come in to-day for the weather will hinder him. (*The Innkeeper opens the upper part of a Dutch door at the back of the stage and looks out. His wife has been stirring the contents of a pot with a long spoon.*)

HOSTESS. Shut the door, man, the wind blows the ashes all about. (*She sweeps up the hearth with a brush of turkey feathers.*) Post is two days late, and the stage couldn't get through yesterday. (*Sound of jingling and rattling.*) What's that? (*She listens.*)

INNKEEPER (*shouts*). George! George! (*He opens the door, dashes out, and comes back carrying a carpet bag in each hand, followed by George, the stable boy, carrying a small cowhide trunk. They put the luggage down by the door.*)

HOSTESS. How many?

STABLE BOY. Couldn't see. They're climbing out as fast as they can with the curtains down on both sides. There is a heap of bags and trunks. (*A lady clutching her bonnet with one hand and holding her wrap around her with the other blows in through the door, followed by a gentleman, her husband, who clings to his high hat and a leather-covered box studded with brass nails.*)

HOSTESS. You're welcome, come up by the fire. George! Shut the door!

Courtesy D. W. Griffith

"FLYING STAGE COACHES" AT ONE TIME TOOK THIRTY-SIX HOURS TO COVER THE NINETY MILES FROM PHILADELPHIA TO NEW YORK. TRAINS NOW TAKE TWO HOURS

GENTLEMAN. Can we have a room and supper? My wife is very tired.

LADY (*who has sunk on a bench by the fire*). Since three o'clock this morning we have been riding. And the roads!

HOSTESS. Yes, I know, ma'am—up to the hubs of the wheels in water and mud, and the stage jolting so that—

LADY (*interrupting*). I feel as if every bone in my body were broken. (*The door is flung violently open again. The Merchant and the Judge dash in out of the rain, struggling with their umbrellas. The Innkeeper comes in with more bags. George follows with some bundles.*)

JUDGE. Something hot at once for this gentleman and me. Perhaps you and your lady will join us, sir. (*Turns to the Lady and the Gentleman.*)

HOSTESS. At once, Your Honor.

MERCHANT. And the Judge and I will each want a room, supper and breakfast.

HOSTESS. I've a very nice room with two large beds in it, and only one gentleman—a very nice, quiet gentleman—sleeping there to-night. This lady and her husband have bespoke the other room.

JUDGE. That will have to serve then. Can we have supper at once?

HOSTESS. As fine a piece of boiled meat with cabbage as Your Honor ever tasted.

GENTLEMAN. And what have you to drink?

INNKEEPER (*coming in through the door at the right with a huge pitcher in one hand and a hollow metal cone in the other*). Mulled cider, sir, and there is no tavern below Boston and Washington that will give you better. (*He pours cider from the pitcher into the cone and sticks the point of the cone between the logs. There is a general movement.*)

HOSTESS. This way, ma'am. (*They go out of the door on the left. The three men draw chairs up to the fire. There is the sound of horses' hoofs and a banging on the door. The Landlord comes in and opens the door.*)

LANDLORD (*shouts*). George! George! (*The Postman carrying a small leather pouch, enters. He takes off his coonskin cap and flicks the rain from it.*)

MAIL CARRIER. Hello, Landlord! I'm only three days late this trip. I've brought you news of the hanging. (*He turns to the group at the fire who have been looking at him and recognizes the Judge.*) Good evening, gentlemen. And Your Honor, you've done

what you could to make the roads safe for us hard-working men. It is a good riddance when one of these knights of the road is set dancing at the end of rope.

Stage Coach Driver enters just as the Mail Carrier says the last sentence.

JUDGE. It was my painful duty to sentence Hare and Alexander to death—may God have mercy on their souls!

STAGE COACH DRIVER. They got what they deserved, Judge. They held me up at the point of a pistol. I tried to drive over them—I was driving the mail coach then—but they had built a fence across the road. Those rascals took me and the Postman and tied us to a tree and then they began going through the mail bags.

GENTLEMAN. Was there much of value in the mail?

STAGE COACH DRIVER. A goodly number of bank notes. After they got what they wanted, they tied us to the back of the wagon and galloped off.

MERCHANT. Could you see their faces?

STAGE COACH DRIVER. O, yes, they were blacked up. But they were white men,—young, too.

MAIL CARRIER (*he has been opening the mail bag and dumping its contents which consist of a few newspapers, a letter, and a small package on the table*). Here's the account of the hanging. Here, judge.

JUDGE (*takes the paper, goes over to the lamp and reads*). Agreeably to public notice the awful sentence of death was yesterday inflicted on J. Thompson Hare and John Alexander in the presence of a vast

concourse assembled to witness the ignominious ceremony. The gallows was sufficiently elevated above the walls of the prison to afford a distinct view of the unfortunate men to spectators at a distance of several hundred yards. Their lives have expiated the crime for which they suffered.

(*The sound of steps is heard.*)

GENTLEMAN. Gentlemen, will you be kind enough to change the subject? My wife is very nervous, and much afraid of being attacked by highwaymen. This story might alarm her. (*The Lady enters. The gentlemen make a place for her by the fire. She sits wearily in her chair.*)

LADY. Travelling is a most fatiguing affair. We were in the coach by three o'clock this morning and 'tis now seven, and we have gone thirty miles,—a long journey!

GENTLEMAN. You must not lose your courage yet, my dear, there is still many days' travel between us and Charleston.

MERCHANT. Travel has improved very much, madam, since my young days. We followed the Indian trails then on horseback for the most part, where we were not forced to go on foot. Now a delicate female such as you are may see something of the world, for travelling by stage coach or on canal boats is easy—nay, almost luxurious.

JUDGE. Our splendid turnpike roads are an example to all the world. One can frequently move in good weather at the rate of eight miles an hour.

MERCHANT. My good mother rode to church behind my father on a pillion and never got farther

than ten miles away from home, and she brought up her family to be God-fearing men and women.

LADY. I have ridden on a pillion, too, but I cannot think there is anything wrong in wishing to see the world.

GENTLEMAN. Especially since we have added all those thousands of miles of the Louisiana territory to our country.

JUDGE. Lewis and Clark report that they are rich in every natural resource.

LADY. I wonder whether railroads will ever be built over long distances.

JUDGE. Certainly not, madam. (*Angrily.*) Certainly not!

(*Another traveller, an engineer, who has just dismounted from his horse enters. He is an elderly man.*)

ENGINEER. Good-evening, friends, 'tis nasty weather and slow travelling. Wait until we get proper railroads built.

JUDGE. God forbid! Railroads can't be built, and if they could, they wouldn't run.

ENGINEER. My dear sir, —

JUDGE. Don t "dear sir" me. I desire no familiarity from one who wishes to inflict such a curse as the railroads on mankind. They would ruin the health of the community; they might even drive those who rode in them insane. But everybody of any judgment must know that carriages drawn by steam are impossible.

ENGINEER. It has been done.

JUDGE. Sir, you insult me. I shall remove myself from the company of one who has no reverence

for the laws of either man or God. (*He rises and stalks out.*)

LADY (*to the Engineer*). Won't you tell us more about railroads?

MERCHANT. If we are ever going to develop our western lands, we must have better means of transportation than canal boats, though they have lowered the freight charges from nine dollars and fifty cents a hundred pounds to four dollars a hundred pounds.

ENGINEER. I'm sorry that His Honor, the Judge, has been driven from this warm fireside by railroads. But the time is coming when people will travel in stages moved by steam engines from one city to another. There is no reason why a speed of fifty miles an hour should not be attained.

LADY. O, how fearful, and exciting! (*She leans forward.*)

ENGINEER (*smiles at her*). People will be able to sleep in these stages as comfortably as they do in steam boats.

GENTLEMAN (*patting his wife's shoulder*). That will please you.

LADY. How comfortable!

ENGINEER. THE UNITED STATES WILL BE THE FIRST NATION TO INTRODUCE THIS KIND OF TRAVEL, AND HER WEALTH AND POWER WILL RISE TO AN UNPARALLELED HEIGHT.

JUDGE (*coming into the room behind the Hostess and followed by the landlord. They have all three heard the last sentence. The Landlord and his wife stand amazed; the Judge comes forward with an effort to be agreeable*). You are still telling this young lady fairy

stories. (*Then in a very sarcastic manner.*) When do you expect to fly?

MERCHANT and GENTLEMAN (*laughing heartily*). Fly!!

ENGINEER. Why not?

JUDGE. Fool!

(*The Hostess has been setting the table. The Innkeeper has come over to the fire where the cider has been heating. He pulls out the loggerhead, a short, thick, iron rod that was heated in the coals and then used to stir the cider in making a drink called "flip."*

INNKEEPER (*putting the loggerhead into the cider*). That's a more useful piece of iron than all your iron rails,—begging your pardon, sir. (*He bows and smiles at the Engineer.*)

JUDGE. Well said!

LADY. Wait and see.

HOSTESS (*she plunges an iron fork into the pot*). Railroads or no railroads—that beef and cabbage is just cooked to a turn.

(*The company starts to seat itself at the table as the curtain falls.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT II*

Place: The Interior of a Train on the Erie Road.
Time: 1851.

The interior of the car is very much like the interior of a stagecoach except that the seats run round the sides. There is room for eight persons, if the persons are

*Written from descriptions given by several authorities consulted.

not too wide. There are cross seats on the roof. A very narrow ledge runs along the side of the stage car; a door opens on this ledge and the conductor stands there. The stage cars are fastened together and attached to the engine by bits of chain. When the curtain rises the stage car is empty. The voice of the Conductor is heard outside.

CONDUCTOR. Tickets, please! Everybody get aboard—just going to start!

ELEAZER LORD. Come along! Stop admiring the engine and get in so you can see how it works. Mrs. Pierson, are you ready?

MRS. PIERSON. I'm so excited! (*She steps in.*) Coming back I'm going to ride on top. (*She seats herself facing the engine.*)

ELDERLY LADY. Seventeen miles an hour—what a terrible speed!

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. Risking one's neck, I'd say,—but you would come, so I came with you.

YOUNG LADY. I'm so frightened! It will be like riding behind a runaway horse.

MR. PIERSON. Don't be alarmed; we are perfectly safe. My wife and I have ridden behind an engine several times.

YOUNG GENTLEMAN. If this thing is a success one can ship flour from Illinois quicker and even cheaper than by way of the Erie Canal.

MR. PIERSON. This thing is a success, young man. It will make our country the greatest country on earth.

ELEAZER LORD. The railroad is making this country into a real United States. Wait until a road has been built from the Atlantic to the Pacific.

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. Impossible! Engines can't pull trains uphill.

MRS. PIERSON (*to her husband*). Do you remember the Judge at the inn who was so sure that steam couldn't be used to pull stages?

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. Steam can only pull on a level.

(*Just then the Conductor who has been standing on the ledge assisting everybody to get in takes a small tin horn out of his pocket and blows two loud, shrill blasts on it. There is a pause and then the eight passengers inside pitch forward out of their seats, and there are shrieks and shouts from the passengers on the roof as the engine starts and jerks the stage car after it. Everybody scrambles back into his seat.*)

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. Dangerous,—very dangerous. I told you so.

MRS. PIERSON. O, that is only the start! we will move quite smoothly in a moment.

YOUNG LADY. O! How fast we are going!

ELDERLY LADY (*looking out of the window*). Mercy me! That horse is running away!

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. I should think he would with this frightful monster puffing out smoke and flame rushing along beside him. (*Voices from the top.*)

FIRST VOICE. O! My eyes are full of cinders!

SECOND VOICE. That spark set fire to my dress!

THIRD VOICE. Put up your umbrellas; they will protect you from sparks.

FIRST VOICE. This is frightful! My umbrella is on fire!

SECOND VOICE. Throw it away.

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. We will be burned alive!

MR. PIERSON. No fear, sir, those are sparks that fly from the pine wood we are using to keep the fire going under the boiler.

ELEAZER LORD. We are going to have a locomotive some day soon that will burn coal; then there will be no such sparks.

MR. PIERSON. How much faster we are moving, my dear, than on that first trip you and I took in 1831, in South Carolina!

MRS. PIERSON. O, yes! This is a tremendous improvement. I knew that railroads were sure to be built.

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. Well, give me a good horse to pull me and a Conestoga wagon to carry my goods. The good old ways are best.

ELDERLY LADY. Hush, my dear, the world must progress.

YOUNG GENTLEMAN. Hurrah! That is the right spirit! Steam cars, steam boats—Why! We may be able to fly some of these days.

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. What nonsense!

(*The car begins to slow down.*)

YOUNG LADY. What's happened?

ELDERLY LADY. What's the matter?

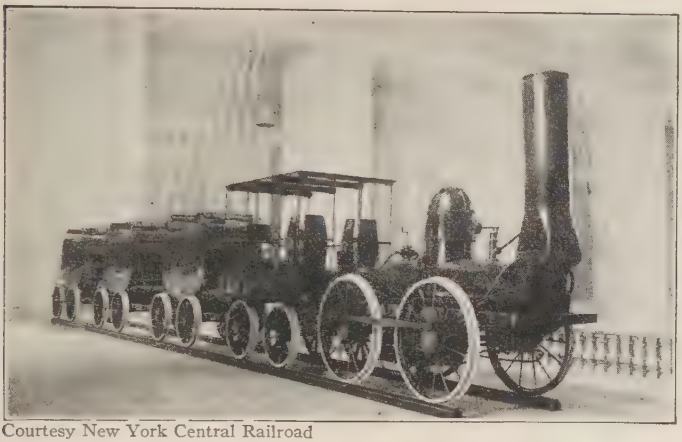
YOUNG GENTLEMAN. Cow on the track?

(*The Engineer, very black and grimy, and the Conductor look in at the door.*)

ENGINEER. I've burned up all the wood, and can't get any farther.

MRS. PIERSON. This delay won't happen when we can burn coal.

CONDUCTOR. We will save time if all of you gentle-



Courtesy New York Central Railroad

THE DE WITT RAILWAY TRAIN, FIRST RUN IN NEW YORK STATE IN 1831

men will get out and help us get more wood to keep the fire up. It is only two miles to the next tavern, and there we can get dinner.

ELDERLY GENTLEMAN. I prefer to walk. (*Turning to his wife.*) Are you coming with me?

ELDERLY LADY. Certainly not! I have always wanted to ride on a railroad ever since I first heard about them when I was a young girl. No, I shall stay just where I am,—I like it, even though the jolting does bruise me from head to foot.

(*The other men have gotten out while the discussion has been going on; they come back one after another and get in. The Conductor takes out his horn and blows it again. Again there is a jerk but not nearly so bad as before.*)

MRS. PIERSON. Why, that was much better.

MR. PIERSON. Yes, we are learning by our mistakes.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

SCENE I

Scene: Interior of the Hardware Store of Huntington and Hopkins, 52 K Street, Sacramento, California.
Time: 1860.

C. P. Huntington is selling a tin coffee pot to a miner, while Mark Hopkins is sitting behind a desk busy with account books. A clerk is unpacking some boxes. There are shelves holding hardware of all kinds. At the back center a door leads in from the street. There are windows on either side of this door. On the left there is a long counter; on the right a short counter ending in a high desk.

HUNTINGTON (*to the miner*). That's warranted to wear, last you for years. (*The miner takes it, holds it up to the light, taps it, puts his money down and goes out.*) Judah's got back from his surveying trip.

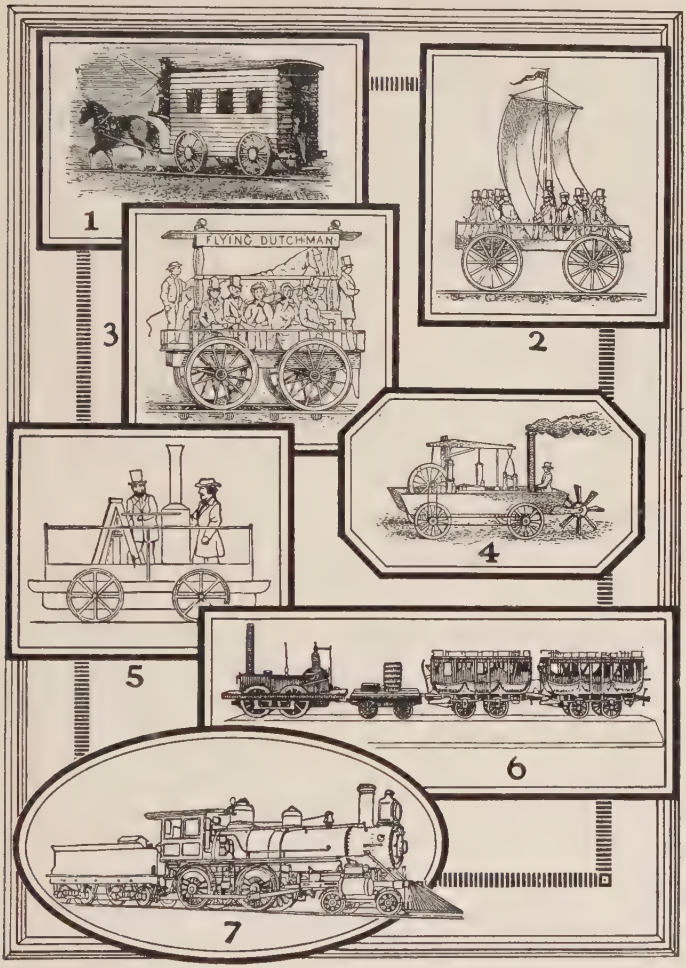
HOPKINS. Have you seen him?

HUNTINGTON. No, but he is likely to drop in any minute.

SAM, THE CLERK (*who is unpacking a box by the window*). Here comes Mr. Judah down the street. (*The door opens and Theodore D. Judah walks in with a portfolio of papers under his arm.*)

JUDAH. Hello, Collis! Where's Hopkins?

HUNTINGTON (*rushing out from behind the counter*). Glad to see you. (*Shakes hands vigorously. Hopkins has come out from behind the desk and slaps Judah on the back and shakes hands.*)



THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE MODERN RAILROAD LOCOMOTIVE

1. The First Railway Passenger Car, 1827; 2. Passenger Car Rigged With a Sail, 1827; 3. The Flying Dutchman of the Charleston and Hamburg Railroad, 1829; 4. An Experiment of 1830; 5. Peter Cooper's Locomotive, 1830; 6. First Train Over the Pennsylvania Railroad, 1835; 7. Modern Steam Engine.

HOPKINS. When did you get back?

JUDAH. We got in last night.

HOPKINS. Was the trip a success?

JUDAH. Wait till you see what I've got here. (*He lays his portfolio on the counter.*)

HUNTINGTON (*to the Clerk*). Sam, go down the street and ask Mr. Stanford and the two Crocker brothers to step up here. Tell them that Mr. Judah has returned from his trip and has plans to show us. Hurry!

(*The Clerk snatches his cap from a nail.*)

SAM. Yes, sir! (*He dashes out through the door slamming it after him.*)

HOPKINS. How did Mrs. Judah stand the trip?

JUDAH. Wonderfully. And we couldn't have got on without her. She kept us supplied with trout, had food ready for us when we got in from our day's work, and, best of all, she has done some beautiful sketches of the mountains. If a transcontinental railroad is built, my wife ought to get a lot of the credit. (*He begins to unfasten the portfolio. Hopkins brings a chair out from behind the desk and another from behind the counter. Huntington brings up a packing box and a stool. Judah holds up a sketch.*) Look at that! (*Huntington and Hopkins take the sketch and examine it.*)

HUNTINGTON. That ought to go on the stock certificates of the transcontinental road. Got any more? (*Judah takes out a number of sketches.*)

HOPKINS. Say! People ought to see these. Some of those Easterners who can't see anything but Europe would open their eyes at these mountains.

There is nothing finer! (*The door opens and the Crocker brothers and Leland Stanford come in followed by the Clerk. They crowd around Judah.*)

CHARLES CROCKER. Glad to see you.

GEORGE CROCKER. Welcome!

LELAND STANFORD. Were you successful?

HUNTINGTON. Sit down, and Theodore will show us his plans. (*They sit on the box, the stool and the two chairs while Judah stands by the counter on which lies the portfolio.*)

JUDAH. I've found what we went to look for, —a pass over the Sierra Nevadas that will save one hundred and eighty-four miles of construction.

LELAND STANFORD. One hundred and eighty-four miles less than the government surveys?

JUDAH. Yes.

CHARLES CROCKER. That will mean a lot of money saved, too.

JUDAH. About thirteen and a half millions of dollars less than the plans the government engineers submitted to Jefferson Davis. Look at this map. (*He shows them another drawing and points to a road.*) Two hundred eight mule teams pass over the Placerville road to Virginia City every day, and there are a hundred more over the Henness road. That traffic alone would make an income for that part of the railroad—But those capitalists in San Francisco only laugh.

GEORGE CROCKER. They are too short-sighted, and too much interested in the China trade, and in the mines.

LELAND STANFORD. They can't see that a transcontinental railroad is a bigger thing than all of their mines and the whole fleet that sails across the Pacific. The Union Pacific Company are having trouble in getting enough money to start their end of the road at Omaha. But this transcontinental railroad is a necessity. It will make the Union complete. Now it is a geographical idea, a political theory. We are East and West as well as North and South. The railroad ought to make us a union, one people, and the greatest nation on earth.

HUNTINGTON. Representative Sargent ought to get a bill before Congress. He understands the importance of this road.

JUDAH. O, yes, he is interested; but what we need now is money, besides the support of Congress in issuing bonds, and land grants.

HOPKINS. Well, the old saying is: "Money talks." I'm ready to contribute fifteen thousand dollars toward financing the Central Pacific Railroad Company.

GEORGE CROCKER (*to his brother*). Charlie, we ought to be able to raise twenty-five thousand.

LELAND STANFORD. Another twenty-five thousand from me. And I want to suggest that we get James Bailey.

HUNTINGTON. O, yes, Bailey will want to be one of us. I'll add my fifteen thousand to Mark's.

CHARLES CROCKER. I move that we organize the company at once. Stanford, you ought to be president. You are sure to be the next governor of California, and you may be able to help us in the legis-

lature. (*He turns to the others.*) Am I right? (*They nod, or answer, "Yes," "Certainly."*)

LELAND STANFORD. I'm willing to accept the responsibility if Huntington will be vice-president. (*To Huntington.*) Will you?

HUNTINGTON. I'll be glad to do my share. (*He turns to the Crockers.*) One of you might be treasurer.

CHARLES CROCKER. No. Mark should be treasurer. He is good at bookkeeping.

LELAND STANFORD. I'd like Bailey for secretary.

HOPKINS. Of course we do not need to announce that our chief engineer is Theodore D. Judah, whose enthusiasm and knowledge have made the whole plan seem possible to us who are plain business men.

JUDAH. This railroad is the dream of my life, friends. There is nothing I will not do to make it a success. I am sure that I can interest a number of influential men who want to see our country bound together more securely. What did Shakespeare say about riveting friends to one's soul with hooks of steel? Gentlemen, we will rivet the country together with steel rails.

[*Curtain*]

SCENE II

Scene: Promontory Point, Utah.
Time: May 10, 1869.

The rails of the Union Pacific Railroad have been laid, and now the last spikes that will complete the transcontinental railroad suggested in 1840 by Asa Whitney, but actually started by Theodore D. Judah in

1860, are to be driven. A great crowd of Indians, Chinese, Mexicans, men of every nationality, many in old army uniforms—for the ex-soldiers of the Civil War did much of the construction work—are watching the two engines. Besides the men there are some children and a number of women.

On the track from the west, the Central Pacific Road, stands a train drawn by the locomotive, "Jupiter." It has travelled six hundred and ninety miles from Sacramento. On the Union Pacific side, coming from the east is the special train drawn by Engine No. 119. It has travelled one thousand eighty-six miles from Omaha.

MRS. PIERSON (*speaking to Mrs. Strowbridge*). Your husband must feel very proud at this moment at the success of his work.

MICHAEL SHAY. Excuse me, ma'am, but Mrs. Strowbridge did as much as the boss. She kept us all enthusiastic when we might have quit the job—what with the Indians attackin', and diggin' through snow drifts piled like mountains.

MRS. STROWBRIDGE. Now, Mike, you didn't need anyone to keep your spirits up. (*She turns to Mrs. Pierson and to Mr. Pierson who is standing beside her.*) I want you to meet Michael Shay who with seven other men laid ten miles of track in one day. (*Michael wipes his hand on his trousers and shakes hands with Mrs. Pierson.*) You are shaking hands with a lady who rode on the first car that was ever drawn by a locomotive.

MICHAEL SHAY. Think of that, now.

MR. PIERSON. That was in 1831, in South Carolina. The coach was drawn by the "Best Friend," a

locomotive that could be put into the cab of the "Jupiter."

MRS. PIERSON. We were so interested and excited by our six-mile trip behind a locomotive that I could talk of nothing else.

MRS. STROWBRIDGE. So you persuaded your father-in-law to build the Erie Railroad in New York, that you might ride on a railroad as often as you pleased. (*They all laugh.*)

MRS. PIERSON. Yes. But this has been the greatest ride of my life,—one thousand and eighty-six miles.

(*General Dodge approaches. Mike touches his cap and turns away.*)

GENERAL DODGE (*to the group of people*). This railroad across the plains ought to do away with Indian raids.

SUPERINTENDENT REED. No one will ever know how many of our men the Indians have killed. The engineers had to lay out the line carrying their surveying instrument in one hand and a gun in the other. And the men fought off the Indians with one hand and wielded pick and shovel with the other. They are brave men, these bold pioneers, who with pick and shovel labor untiringly in the face of continued danger.

GEN. DODGE. My men were on guard constantly.

MRS. PIERSON. I can't help sympathizing with the Indians. We have taken their land.

MR. BENTON. That is true, but WESTWARD THE COURSE OF EMPIRE TAKES ITS WAY. The Sioux

Courtesy Union Pacific Railroad

THE COMPLETION OF THE PACIFIC RAILROAD
The locomotives of the Union Pacific and Central Pacific trains meet at Promontory Point, Utah.

didn't know what to make of the engine; they thought it was a devil. Finally they tried to stop it by stretching a lariat across the tracks with thirty braves holding it at each end.

ENGINEER JOHN R. GILLIES. And after that the Red Man had a new grievance against the Pale Face. So he revenged himself by burning stations, scalping any white man who fell into his hands, and pulling up the stakes that the surveyors had put down to mark the line.

(*Both locomotives give a shrill whistle.*)

GEN. DODGE. The ceremonies are about to begin. Do you see that Chinese smoothing the spot where the last tie is to be laid?

MRS. STROWBRIDGE. My husband and Superintendent Reed of the Union Pacific are carrying the tie of California laurel, the last tie.

GEN. DODGE. We must look at the silver plate in the center, when the ceremonies are over.

MR. HUNTINGTON. The inscription on it reads: THE LAST TIE LAID IN THE COMPLETION OF THE PACIFIC RAILROAD, MAY 10, 1869.

GEORGE CROCKER. Now Durant, Vice-President of the Union Pacific is driving in a spike of gold, silver, and iron from Arizona. (*There is a pause while the group watch the spike driven in place.*) That second spike is of silver from Nevada.

MR. HUNTINGTON. It is a pity that Theodore Judah who started the survey of the road, and whose energy and enthusiasm interested us and the government in it, could not have lived to see the last spike driven.

GEORGE CROCKER. There it goes in. Leland Stanford is driving the last spike, one of California gold, in the transcontinental railroad.

MR. HUNTINGTON. The last spikes were of silver and gold, but (*he turns to the group of men standing with Michael Shay*), it's the millions of iron spikes that you men have hammered in, that have built this road. (*The crowd cheers; then sings* "AMERICA.")

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. Describe any old fashioned inn which you may know.
2. How did people travel at the time of the play? Which was the more comfortable? Why?
3. Was it natural for the old judge at the inn to disbelieve that it was possible to have railroads? Give your reasons.

4. Compare the interior of the train described in Act Two with that of a modern train.

5. Why was it thought that a transcontinental railroad was impossible?

6. What important effects did the transcontinental railroad have in the United States?

7. Who surveyed the route for the railroad? What great difficulties do you think the prospectors must have endured?

8. Where did the railroad from the east and the railroad from the west meet?

9. What do you understand by "Westward the course of empire takes its way?"

10. Write descriptions of the seven stages in the development of the steam engine. Use the pictures in the book as the basis of your descriptions.

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. In 1831 there were six miles of railroad in the United States. Look up the present mileage.

2. Stage an attack by highwaymen on a coach such as is described in Act I.

3. Show in a dialogue between a Californian and a New Englander how the discovery of gold in California made a transcontinental railroad necessary.

4. Find a song that has to do with transportation, either on land or water.

5. Ask your teacher in your physical training period to let you play the game called "Stage Coach" and "Going to Jerusalem."

6. Make a scrapbook of pictures cut from papers and magazines showing means of transportation in various countries.

7. Sketch in an outline map of the United States the route of the Union Pacific Railroad.

8. Make a series of sketches showing the development of the steam engine. The pictures in this book may serve as models.

9. Look up the various modes of travelling in the early nineteenth century.

10. Make a list of as many industries as you know that were developed as a result of the discovery of steam.

Daniel Webster

A Great American Statesman

CHARACTERS

*Mrs. Webster	Sam
*Ebenezer Webster	*Mr. Gore
Mr. Mason	*Mr. Young
Mr. Plummer	*Mr. Bell
*Daniel Webster	*Mr. Foote
*Ezekiel Webster	William Green

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

ACT I

Place: Home of Daniel Webster's Father in a Small Village of New Hampshire.
Time: 1792.

Ebenezer Webster, father of Daniel enters. He hangs his hat on a peg near the door and opens the paper. He settles himself in a chair to read. Mrs. Webster enters.

MRS. WEBSTER. There are two men outside in the yard. They seem to be extremely angry at one another. They seem to be coming this way. (*There is a knock at the door.*) Do you wish to see them? I really do not think that because you are the judge of the county, you should be disturbed in your home.

(*Mr. Webster looks through the window.*)

MR. WEBSTER. Those men are our new neighbors, Mr. Mason and Mr. Plummer. I shall have to try to soothe them.

(*Mrs. Webster goes to the hall. Enter Mr. Mason and Mr. Plummer.*)

MR. MASON. I'm sorry to disturb you, Judge, but Mr. Plummer and I have had an argument, and since he won't be reasonable, we have come to you.

MR. PLUMMER. I am the reasonable one. You won't listen to sense.

MR. MASON. I tell you you are dead wrong about that cow.

MR. PLUMMER. I tell you it wasn't my fault at all.

MR. WEBSTER. Well, well, gentlemen, if you will tell me what the trouble is about, I may be able to help you. Mr. Mason, you have the floor.

MR. MASON. It was this way, Judge. I had a crop of corn. It was in fine condition, and in another month would be ripe. Now Mr. Plummer's red cow got into the field, trampled nearly all the corn down and ate the tops of the stalks. I want Mr. Plummer to pay the damage and he can't see things my way at all.

MR. WEBSTER. Well, Mr. Plummer. What is your side of this dispute?

MR. PLUMMER. This morning, Judge, I took my cow and turned her loose in the pasture. She must have jumped over the fence. Three hours later she came running into the dooryard with Mr. Mason after her with a rake.

MR. MASON. Now, the way I figure it is, that since Mr. Plummer owns the cow, he is responsible for the damage the cow does.

MR. PLUMMER. I don't figure it out that way at all. I let the cow loose in my lot. The lot had a fence around it. I can't help it if my cow is a high jumper.

MR. WEBSTER. Mr. Plummer, the law in this county requires that cows should be kept tied.

(*Mr. Mason jumps to his feet.*)

MR. MASON. Then I am right. Mr. Plummer must pay for the damage.

MR. WEBSTER. No, Mr. Mason. You are wrong, too. The law requires that you build a fence around your cornfield. If you had a fence around your field and the cow jumped over it, you could demand that Mr. Plummer pay for the damage done your corn.

MR. PLUMMER. Then we are both wrong?

MR. WEBSTER. You are both wrong. I advise you, Mr. Mason, not to go to law about it. It would only be a waste of money. You are neighbors and ought to try to see both sides of an argument. The best thing for you to do is to forget all about your quarrel and shake hands.

MR. PLUMMER. I guess the Judge is right. I will keep my cow tied in the future.

MR. MASON. I will have to build a fence. (*The two men shake hands.*) Thanks for your advice, Judge. Good morning.

(*Mr. Mason and Mr. Plummer go out. Mr. Webster again settles himself to read his paper. Daniel and his brother Ezekiel enter. They carry between them a cage in which a frightened woodchuck is held a prisoner.*)

DANIEL. Dad, Zeke and I caught the woodchuck that has been eating our cabbages.

MR. WEBSTER. That's good. The woodchuck has been giving you the slip so often I thought you would never catch him.

EZEKIEL. And now that we've caught him, we ought to kill him.

DANIEL. I don't think he ought to be killed.

EZEKIEL. He has done enough damage. He ought to die.

DANIEL. No, he ought not to die.

(*Mr. Webster lays aside his paper.*)

MR. WEBSTER. Tut, tut! This quarreling won't do. I have just settled a dispute about a cow. Now I suppose I shall have to settle about the life of this woodchuck. We shall hold court right here before the little prisoner and you shall both plead your case. Ezekiel, you are first.

EZEKIEL. You know Dad,—

MR. WEBSTER. Remember you are not pleading before your father, but before the judge of this court.

EZEKIEL. Your honor, I hold that this woodchuck ought to be killed. First: If we let it go after we have caught it, it will be more difficult than ever to entice it into a trap again. Second: The woodchuck is a harmful animal. It destroys the cabbages and other vegetables and even the little chickens. Third: If we let *this* woodchuck go, we may as well let *all* the woodchucks go; then our farm will soon be over-run with them.

(*Ezekiel sits down. The Judge looks pleased with Ezekiel's argument.*)

MR. WEBSTER. Now Daniel.

(*Daniel stands before his father and places the cage on the table near him.*)

DANIEL. God made the woodchuck. He made him to enjoy the freedom of the fields. The woodchuck

has as much right to enjoy the blessings of God as we have, and we have no right to say that it shall not. What if the woodchuck did eat a few vegetables? It meant no harm. According to the woodchuck's ideas of right, he did right. Can we punish a creature for doing what he thinks is right? Have we a right to kill this poor creature because he was hungry and ate? We have no right to deprive this animal of the means of living. His life is as precious to him as ours is to us. Look at its soft, pleading eyes! See how it trembles with fear as it mutely begs for the life which is so dear to it!

MR. WEBSTER. Zeke, let the woodchuck go!

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Law office of Mr. Gore in Boston, Massachusetts.
Time: 1804.

An office boy is assorting the mail. He whistles at his work. Daniel enters carrying some books which he places on his desk.

DANIEL. Good morning, Sam. Where is Mr. Gore?

SAM. He is over at the Court House. (*Sam continues whistling at his work. Daniel hangs up his coat, sits at his desk and opens a book.*) Say, Mr. Webster, are you going to be a lawyer like Mr. Gore?

DANIEL. I don't know that I shall ever be as great as Mr. Gore, but at any rate I am studying and I ought to be a full-fledged lawyer within a year.

SAM. I would like to be a lawyer and try murder cases.

DANIEL. I would not care for that kind of work. I would rather study constitutional law. Any mail for me, Sam?

SAM. One letter and some papers. (*Hands the letter to Daniel who eagerly breaks the seal and reads. Sam watches him.*) Good news?

DANIEL. Excellent, Sam, I am offered a position paying fifteen hundred dollars a year.

SAM. Fifteen hundred dollars! Are you going to take it?

DANIEL. I think so. I shall have to consult Mr. Gore about it.

SAM. But fifteen hundred dollars! That's a heap of money.

DANIEL. More than four times what I earn now.

(*Mr. Gore enters. He carries some papers which he places on his desk. He takes out an envelope from his desk.*)

MR. GORE. Sam, take this to Mr. Greene's office.

SAM. Yes, sir. (*He takes the envelope and goes out.*)

MR. GORE. We have won the case of Johnson against Williams, Daniel. You should have been there to hear the Judge's decision.

DANIEL. I am glad we won the case, sir, and sorry I was not there to hear what the judge said. Mr. Gore, can you spare me a few moments? I need your advice.

MR. GORE. Certainly, Daniel. Sit down.

DANIEL. I have been offered a position as Clerk of the Court of Common Pleas, at a salary of fifteen hundred dollars a year. I need the money, sir, and

I am thinking of giving up my work here and taking the position. What would you do?

MR. GORE. "YOU OF COURSE KNOW THAT A CLERK OF THE COURT OF COMMON PLEAS IS DEPENDENT UPON THE BOUNTY AND FAVOR OF JUDGES. I DO NOT THINK YOU COULD STAND IT LONG. SO MY ADVICE TO YOU IS: GO AHEAD AND FINISH YOUR STUDIES. YOU ARE POOR ENOUGH. BUT THERE ARE GREATER EVILS THAN POVERTY: LIVE ON NO MAN'S FAVOR: WHAT BREAD YOU EAT LET IT BE THE BREAD OF INDEPENDENCE: PURSUE YOUR PROFESSION: MAKE YOURSELF USEFUL TO YOUR FRIENDS AND A LITTLE FORMIDABLE TO YOUR ENEMIES AND YOU HAVE NOTHING TO FEAR."

DANIEL. Thank you, Mr. Gore, thank you, sir. I confess the thoughts of earning a large salary and living in ease did tempt me to give up struggling to become a lawyer and winning a name for myself. But now I see the wisdom of your advice. I will stick to my career in spite of all hardships.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: Corridor of the Capitol in Washington.
Time: January 26, 1830.

Legislators are passing to and fro. Mr. Bell, of New Hampshire is standing alone in deep thought. Mr. Young, a politician from Massachusetts, rushes up to him.

MR. YOUNG. Ah, Mr. Bell, I have been looking all over for you. What are you, and what are the other

northern senators going to do about Mr. Hayne's speech? He attacked Mr. Foote's resolution and he criticized the northern states, especially the New England states. I ask you, sir, are you going to stand it? The people of New England expect their representatives to give expression to their opinions. His speech was unjust! What are you going to do about it, sir?

MR. BELL. Now, my dear sir, don't get excited—we—we—

MR. YOUNG. Don't get excited! How can I help it, sir? Mr. Hayne in his speech accuses the North of trying to check the growth of the West, he made a bitter attack on Mr. Webster, and he preached the doctrine of nullification!

MR. BELL. That's a dangerous doctrine to advocate and I agree with you Mr. Young, Mr. Hayne must receive a convincing reply.

MR. YOUNG. Exactly. Who is going to answer him?

MR. BELL. I was just thinking of that myself. Mr. Hayne must be answered in the Senate and answered at once by one of our best speakers.

MR. YOUNG. He has presumed to advance the argument that a state has the right to nullify a law made by the United States. If this argument prevails, of what purpose is the United States? Of what purpose is the Constitution?

MR. BELL. Depend upon it, Mr. Young, somebody will answer Mr. Hayne. (*Mr. Foote enters walking slowly with his hands clasped behind him. Mr. Bell stops him.*) Mr. Foote, you are the man we

want. It seems the North is aroused over Mr. Hayne's answer to the resolutions you introduced in regard to the sale of western lands.

MR. FOOTE. Yes, I know it. I have received letters from nearly all cities in the North urging me to take the floor and answer these arguments.

MR. YOUNG. Why don't you do it?

MR. FOOTE. If Mr. Hayne would keep to the question, I would. But he branches off on subjects of protective tariff and state rights. I am not his equal in the discussion of those questions.

MR. YOUNG. But he must be answered. The voters of the North demand that.

MR. FOOTE. Certainly. The best speaker from the North should crush his arguments.

MR. BELL. Whom do you consider the greatest speaker of the North?

MR. FOOTE. I believe Mr. Webster is best able to answer Mr. Hayne. He is coming along the corridor now. You might speak to him about it.

(*Mr. Webster walks along reading a paper. He halts nearby and watches the crowd of people file into the Senate Chamber.*)

DANIEL WEBSTER (*to Mr. Foote*). These are trying times in the political world. Mr. Hayne's speech is almost certain to excite the citizens of the North.

MR. FOOTE. This gentleman, Mr. Young, is a native of Boston on a visit to Washington. He would like to see Mr. Hayne answered.

MR. BELL. IT IS TIME, IT IS HIGH TIME THAT THE PEOPLE OF THE COUNTRY SHOULD KNOW WHAT THE CONSTITUTION IS.

DANIEL WEBSTER. "THEN BY THE BLESSING OF HEAVEN THEY SHALL LEARN THIS DAY BEFORE THE SUN GOES DOWN WHAT I UNDERSTAND THE CONSTITUTION TO BE."

(*Mr. Webster passes into the Senate Chamber.*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: Boston Common.
Time: Several Days Later.

A crowd has gathered about William Green who is standing on a box.

GREEN. Wait here friends. I have just gotten word that Mr. Young is on the way from the dock riding a fast horse. He brings news from the Capital. Webster has answered Hayne.

CROWD. Hurrah for Webster! Three cheers.

GREEN. Mr. Young took the fastest ship he could get.

(*There is the sound of a rapidly approaching horse.*)

CROWD. Here comes Mr. Young. Make way!

(*Mr. Young dashes up, dismounts and jumps upon the box.*)

MR. YOUNG. Friends, I bring you the best of news. On January 26, Daniel Webster replied to Hayne's speech.

CROWD. Hurrah for Webster! Hurrah!

MR. YOUNG. The Senate Chamber was crowded with friends of the North and friends of the South. Everybody was excited, even the Vice-President. But when Daniel Webster rose in his quiet and dignified manner to answer Hayne you could have heard a pin drop.

© Underwood and Underwood, N. Y.

DANIEL WEBSTER REPLYING TO ROBERT HAYNE

CROWD. What did he say?

MR. YOUNG. He answered every one of Hayne's arguments and he explained so clearly what the Constitution is that nobody will ever forget what he said. I have had his speech printed and have brought you copies. They ought to publish the speech throughout the length and breadth of the land. Listen to the closing lines:

WHEN MY EYES SHALL BE TURNED TO BEHOLD, FOR THE LAST TIME, THE SUN IN HEAVEN, MAY I NOT SEE HIM SHINING ON THE BROKEN AND DISHONORED FRAGMENTS OF A ONCE GLORIOUS UNION; ON STATES DISSEVERED, DISCORDANT, BELLIGERENT; ON A LAND RENT WITH CIVIL FEUDS, OR DRENCHED, IT MAY BE, IN FRATERNAL BLOOD. LET THEIR LAST FEEBLE AND LINGERING GLANCE RATHER BEHOLD THE GORGEOUS ENSIGN OF THE REPUBLIC, NOW KNOWN AND HONORED THROUGHOUT THE EARTH, STILL FULL HIGH ADVANCED,

ITS ARMS AND TROPHIES STREAMING IN THEIR ORIGINAL LUSTER, NOT A STRIPE ERASED OR POLLUTED, NOT A SINGLE STAR OBSCURED, BEARING FOR ITS MOTTO NO SUCH MISERABLE INTERROGATORY AS "WHAT IS ALL THIS WORTH," NOR THOSE OTHER WORDS OF DELUSION AND FOLLY "LIBERTY FIRST, AND UNION AFTERWARDS"; BUT EVERYWHERE, SPREAD ALL OVER IN CHARACTERS OF LIVING LIGHT, BLAZING ON ALL ITS AMPLE FOLDS, AS THEY FLOAT OVER THE SEA AND OVER THE LAND, AND IN EVERY WIND UNDER THE WHOLE HEAVENS, THAT OTHER SENTIMENT, DEAR TO EVERY AMERICAN HEART,—LIBERTY AND UNION, NOW AND FOREVER, ONE AND INSEPARABLE.

[*Curtain*]

THE AMERICAN'S CREED

I believe in the United States of America as a government of the people, by the people, for the people; whose just powers are derived from the consent of the governed; a democracy in a republic; a sovereign nation of many sovereign states; a perfect union, one and inseparable; established upon those principles of freedom, equality, justice, and humanity for which American patriots sacrificed their lives and fortunes.

I therefore believe it is my duty to my country to love it; to support its Constitution; to obey its laws; to respect its flag; and to defend it against all enemies.

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What arguments did the neighbors make when they wished Mr. Webster to settle their dispute?
2. How does Act One tell us something of Daniel Webster's character?
3. Tell the meaning of "he preached the doctrine of nullification."
4. Read Mr. Hayne's speech, and write an account of what he said in your own words.
5. What was the attack supposed to have been made by Hayne upon the North?
6. Who was it that answered that attack? How did he answer it?
7. Give the pith of his speech.

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Look up your histories and describe Henry Clay's "Compromise Bill of 1850."
2. Webster spoke in favor of preservation of the Union. He advocated compromise. The people of the North believed that he had betrayed them by his famous 7th of March speech. Read this speech.
3. Read in your histories the six compromises of the "Compromise Bill of 1850."
4. Choose three members on each side to debate. "Was Daniel Webster justified in making that speech?" The class should be the judges.
5. Look up your atlas and describe the probable way in which Mr. Young travelled from Washington to Boston with the news of Webster's speech.
6. Make a sketch of the woodchuck and describe its coloring.

Manifest Destiny

Accession of Territory to the United States

CHARACTERS

Virginia	*General Jackson
Maryland	British Ambassador
Pennsylvania	First Citizen
South Carolina	*General Houston
Connecticut	*General Austin
New York	Second Citizen
New Jersey	Mexican Ambassador
North Carolina	First Member
Massachusetts	Second Member
Georgia	First Ambassador
Kentuckian	Second Ambassador
†Bookkeeper	*Theodore Roosevelt
†Miss Columbia	Secretary of State
†Uncle Sam	Office Boy
*James Monroe	*General Goethals

*General Gorgas

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

† The characters of the Bookkeeper, Miss Columbia, and Uncle Sam are symbolic. The Bookkeeper represents the reactionary element in the country, Miss Columbia represents progressiveness, and Uncle Sam represents common sense and good judgment.

THE PROLOGUE

Time: 1781–1787, the Critical Period in American History.

THE CURTAIN *rises on a large room with two windows at the back and doors leading out from the right and the left. Between the windows hangs a large map showing the thirteen original states, and the land west of the*

Mississippi, with the Great Lakes and south to Florida divided off with the claims of the various states. In the center of the stage is a large table around which are seated thirteen gentlemen, each representing a state. At the right draped on the wall is an American flag showing the blue background with thirteen stars. The gentlemen have ink wells, quill pens, sand boxes, and sheets of paper in front of them. Throughout the Prologue the characters are addressed in parliamentary form as the "Representative from Virginia," etc.

VIRGINIA. Gentlemen, this confederation is forcing a very serious problem.

MARYLAND. We can pass laws but cannot enforce them. The states laugh at the treaties we make and violate them as they please.

PENNSYLVANIA. The public treasury is empty. The states do not contribute as they agreed.

SOUTH CAROLINA. Some method of paying our debt to France and to the officers and soldiers of the continental army must be devised.

MARYLAND. Why not sell the crown lands?

CONNECTICUT. What do you mean by crown lands?

MARYLAND. The land beyond the mountains, west to the Mississippi and north to the Great Lakes. That was ceded to George the Third by France, in 1763, was held as crown lands as such and was not included in the thirteen original colonies.

VIRGINIA. Why, the greater part of that territory belongs to Virginia.

NEW YORK. I can show you the Iroquois grants that establish New York's claim.

CONNECTICUT. Connecticut, too, owns much of that territory.

MARYLAND. No doubt you can all establish your rights but my proposition is that you give up your rights to the common good.

PENNSYLVANIA. That would be a wise proceeding. I have a letter here from two hundred eighty six officers of the continental army asking that Congress give them the sections of land promised them for their services during the revolution.

NEW JERSEY. This petition is accompanied by a letter from General Washington. He says that north of the Ohio and west of Pennsylvania should be settled and that these men are just the fine, energetic kind to make pioneer settlements.

MARYLAND. Portions of it might be sold and thus money be raised to be used for the common good, to lessen taxation, build roads, and to pay the debts that resulted from the war.

VIRGINIA. Of course, disposing of other people's property for the common good is a very generous action on the part of Maryland and New Jersey, who will not be deprived of very much land.

NEW YORK. I am not so sure the plan of disposing of the Northwest territory is not a good one.

CONNECTICUT. If something of the kind is not done, there will be constant quarreling among the states and with the settlers who go into that country. Already a group of settlers has petitioned Congress to form them into an independent state. They say that Pennsylvania and Virginia both claim the land

GIRLS ON PARADE REPRESENTING THE ORIGINAL THIRTEEN STATES

and that they do not know to which state they must pay their taxes.

MARYLAND. If the states that claim portions of the territory beyond the mountains are not willing to give up their claims and cede their land to the United States, Maryland will not sign the Articles of the Confederation.

NEW YORK. I do not think that your threat has influenced the legislature of New York. We have already decided to cede our claims to Congress.

CONNECTICUT. Connecticut will join you and give up her claim.

VIRGINIA. Virginia might cede all but Kentucky, though I think it is a mistake to give Congress so much power.

NORTH CAROLINA. Kentucky is south of the Ohio. We are not discussing that territory. North Carolina has claims there.

SOUTH CAROLINA. So has South Carolina.

MARYLAND. As thirteen states must sign the Articles of Confederation before they become the law, you might as well throw them into the fire, for Maryland will not ratify the Articles if Virginia does not cede her claim to Congress.

VIRGINIA. It's an outrageous demand, but Virginia has always tried to act for the common good. Virginia will give up her claim provided Congress makes suitable laws for the government of the territory.

NEW YORK. Courts should be established!

VIRGINIA. There must be free schools, freedom of religion, and no slavery.

CONNECTICUT. Free speech, too.

VIRGINIA. Congress must provide for its government as a territory, and then for the admission into the Confederation of such states as may be formed from it.

SOUTH CAROLINA. This has been a wise decision.

GEORGIA. This territory is a nest egg. Who knows what future land may be added to our domain.

[*Curtain*]

ACT I

Place: The Office of Uncle Sam.
Time: 1803–1819, The Louisiana Territory and the Florida Purchase.

A room with a door at the left, and another at the right. At the back hangs a large map of North America showing the United States extending north to the Great

Lakes, west to the Mississippi, south to Louisiana and Florida. In front of the map is a desk—at the right near the front is a desk at which sits the Bookkeeper, at the left is another desk occupied by Miss Columbia. On either side of the map at the back is a long window—The door at the left is slammed open and the Kentuckian rushes in.

KENTUCKIAN. Where's Uncle Sam?

BOOKKEEPER. He's in the inside office.

MISS COLUMBIA (*rising from her desk and smiling*). How do you do, sir?

KENTUCKIAN. Very badly, young woman. Business is getting worse and worse.

MISS COLUMBIA. That's unfortunate. What can we do to help?

KENTUCKIAN. Not much, I'm afraid, now. Uncle Sam should have acted long ago and kept the Spaniards from closing the port of New Orleans.

BOOKKEEPER. It couldn't be done.

KENTUCKIAN. If something isn't done we farmers west of the Alleghanies will either join the Spanish Republics or—

MISS COLUMBIA. Now, don't do anything rash.

BOOKKEEPER. You are Americans. You'd better stick to the old government.

KENTUCKIAN. That's all very well but the government isn't doing anything for us. We heard the other day that Napoleon had taken over Louisiana from the Spanish and given them part of Northern Italy.

BOOKKEEPER. What's that? Napoleon controlling the Mississippi?

KENTUCKIAN. Yes. How would you like that—We might handle Spain, but France—

BOOKKEEPER (*nervously*). Terrible, terrible!

MISS COLUMBIA. I think Uncle Sam has a plan.

KENTUCKIAN. He'd better get it in operation pretty soon.

BOOKKEEPER. Why, we would join Great Britain sooner than let Napoleon found a French Empire west of the Mississippi.

KENTUCKIAN. And he wouldn't stop at the west bank of the river either. He's energetic and ambitious, he is.

(*The door of the inside office opens and Uncle Sam in the traditional garments comes out.*)

UNCLE SAM (*smiling and looking from one to the other of the three occupants*). What's the excitement? (*Goes over to the Kentuckian with outstretched hand.*) What can I do for you?

KENTUCKIAN. Make those Spaniards open the port of New Orleans to our trade. We are ruined if we can't float our products down the river and load them on ships for Europe at New Orleans. The government ought to send troops down there.

BOOKKEEPER. O, no, we don't want war with Spain or France, the taxes would go up again.

MISS COLUMBIA. Our rights ought not to be surrendered but negotiation has always been the way of the United States, not war.

KENTUCKIAN. There isn't time to negotiate. Seize New Orleans!

UNCLE SAM. Perhaps there is another way. Some months ago Mr. Monroe went to France to see if we could arrange matters. I have heard that

he has just returned. (*There is a sound of shouting outside.*) Monroe? New Orleans!

MISS COLUMBIA. He has come.

MONROE (*entering*). Sir! (*He bows.*)

UNCLE SAM. What, back? (*He shakes hands with Monroe.*)

MONROE. You sent me to buy a city and I have come back with an empire.

BOOKKEEPER. What did it cost?

MISS COLUMBIA. Splendid!

KENTUCKIAN. Good work!

UNCLE SAM. Explain.

MONROE. Congress gave me two millions of dollars to buy the port of New Orleans. When Ambassador Livingston and I proposed that purchase—

UNCLE SAM. Yes.

MONROE. Napoleon offered us the whole of the Louisiana Territory for fifteen millions.

BOOKKEEPER. Fifteen millions! More taxes.

MONROE. It was all or nothing. So I bought the whole territory.

BOOKKEEPER. What will we do with it? There will never be enough people to settle it.

KENTUCKIAN. Fifteen millions! that is a magnificent bargain.

BOOKKEEPER. Crazy notion. Why, we haven't got that much money in the treasury!

UNCLE SAM. We can get it. This is the beginning. I can see the country extending to the Pacific. It is our manifest destiny.

(*There is a knock at the door and General Jackson comes in.*)

UNCLE SAM. You are just in time, General. Monroe has come with the news that Bonaparte has sold us the whole of the Louisiana Territory.

JACKSON. Fine. (*Turns to Monroe.*) What are the eastern boundaries?

MONROE. The Perdido River.

JACKSON. We ought to have all of Florida.

UNCLE SAM. That belongs to Spain.

JACKSON. They can't keep order there. It is a nest of runaway slaves, and hostile Indians. My advice is to march in and clear it up.

MISS COLUMBIA. Perhaps negotiation will solve that difficulty too.

UNCLE SAM. The United States bounded on the north by Canada, on the south by the Gulf of Mexico, on the east by the Atlantic, and on the west by the Rocky Mountains. Yes, I think we need Florida to round out our southern boundary. (*While making this speech he points to the map.*)

JACKSON. We are gaining, Uncle Sam! We are gaining!

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Uncle Sam's Office.

Time: 1836–1848. Annexation and Expansion.

The map on the wall shows that Florida and the Louisiana Territory have been added to the United States. The figures "1787" are marked in the Northwest Territory, "1803" in the Louisiana Purchase, and "1819" in Florida; also any states that have been

organized from these territories are outlined. Texas is shown as The Republic of Texas, and is indicated by a color different from that of Mexico, the Rio Grande being the boundary. The Bookkeeper is sitting at his desk. Miss Columbia is looking out of the window. Uncle Sam enters from his private office.

UNCLE SAM. I'm expecting the British Ambassador.

(*There is a knock at the door, and the British Ambassador enters.*)

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. How do you do, sir?

UNCLE SAM. Glad to see you. Sit here. (*They shake hands. They both sit at the desk under the map, Uncle Sam behind the desk and the Ambassador at one side.*)

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. As you know, I've come to discuss that question of the ownership of the Oregon Territory.

UNCLE SAM. We have a perfectly clear claim. Captain Gray discovered and explored the Columbia, and there are several thousand Americans settled and living out there.

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. Quite so. But if you talk about right of ownership by discovery, our claim antedates yours by several hundred years. You must not forget Sir Francis Drake. Then, too, we've built eighteen forts on the north bank of the Columbia.

BOOKKEEPER. We don't want Oregon on any terms. What could we do with it? I have great faith in representative government, but never have I dreamed of the possibility of embracing in one government, people living five thousand miles apart. Who

will go along your line of military posts and take possession of the only part fit to occupy, the strip along the sea coast less than a hundred miles wide? Of what use is Oregon for agriculture? I wouldn't give a pinch of snuff for the whole country.

MISS COLUMBIA. The rest of us do want Oregon. *You* didn't want Louisiana either.

UNCLE SAM (*ignoring the bookkeeper's remarks*). We ought to be able to arrange this matter.

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. Very true, my dear sir. Friendly negotiations.

(*The noise of shouting and firing is heard outside. Miss Columbia and the bookkeeper dash to the window.*)

BOOKKEEPER. Texas and Mexico are quarreling again.

UNCLE SAM. I'm not surprised.

MISS COLUMBIA. Look at that flag with the great star in the center.

UNCLE SAM. That must be the flag of the Republic of Texas.

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. Have they won their independence from Mexico?

BOOKKEEPER. They've declared that they are independent, but they haven't convinced Mexico yet; so the fighting is still going on.

(*Renewed shouts and the sound of firing.*)

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. They seem to be coming in this direction. Have they appealed to the United States for help?

MISS COLUMBIA. Yes. I think we should help them. Texas was settled by Americans. When we

bought Louisiana some considered that Texas was included in that purchase.

UNCLE SAM. But Spain disputed that point; so when we arranged to purchase Florida we made it clear that we had no claim to Texas.

BOOKKEEPER. Then when Mexico declared her independence she included Texas in her boundary.

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. Texas would add a good deal of territory to the United States. It has very fine citizens.

BOOKKEEPER. Yes, the citizens of Texas would be a great asset to the United States.

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. The whole matter is very complicated, but I fear I must ask you to continue the discussion of our claims. How would 49° suit you?

(*More noise outside.*)

UNCLE SAM. This is very distracting. Suppose you let me think the matter over.

TWO CITIZENS (*rushing in without knocking*). 54—40 or fight. We are not going to give up one foot of our claim in Oregon.

(*The British Ambassador looks disgusted.*)

UNCLE SAM. Now, gentlemen, don't get so excited. We can settle this matter with our friend here (*he waves his hand toward the British Ambassador*) without war. There is too much of that on our southwest border already.

BRITISH AMBASSADOR. I'll see you again. (*Smiling at Uncle Sam and at Miss Columbia.*) Good morning! (*Exit British Ambassador.*)

FIRST CITIZEN. You're not going to let those land grabbers cheat us out of Oregon, are you?

UNCLE SAM. No, but we're not going to quarrel with them over a matter that can be arranged peaceably.

(*A group of dusty, ragged, wounded men carrying the flag of Texas, breaks into the room. Some shout, "We're Americans"; others say, "Annexation"; still others say, "Give us arms!" The result is a confused clamor of confused sounds.*)

UNCLE SAM. Where is your leader?

CROWD. General Houston! (*The general steps forward and stands beside the Flag.*)

GENERAL HOUSTON. We must have help from the United States if we would maintain our independence.

GENERAL AUSTIN (*pushing his way through the crowd*). Annexation to the United States will overcome all of our difficulties. Politically we are independent, but racially we belong to the United States. We should have been part of the Louisiana Purchase. The people of Texas implore their countrymen to give them the protection of your institutions which are the work of our common ancestors.

GENERAL HOUSTON. We are fighting to establish in Texas the principles of the Declaration of Independence. Mexico, a Republic in name only, would take from us all of our rights.

CROWD. Remember the Alamo!

FIRST CITIZEN. You should be a part of us.

SECOND CITIZEN. No! Never! More territory! Why, Texas would make twenty states the size of Delaware.

FIRST CITIZEN. The more the better!

SECOND CITIZEN. What about slavery?

GENERAL AUSTIN. Slavery is an institution that cannot be interfered with in the southern states without destroying our economic life.

BOOKKEEPER. That is true.

(*Loud noise from outside. Miss Columbia looks out of the window.*)

MISS COLUMBIA. The Mexican Ambassador is trying to get in.

UNCLE SAM (*to the crowd of Texans*). You've been badly treated and there is much to be said for annexation.

BOOKKEEPER. More trouble ahead! War with Mexico, I expect.

FIRST CITIZEN. So much the better. Mexico misgoverns her territory. Our country should stretch to the Pacific. California has been settled by Americans.

GENERAL AUSTIN. If the United States does not occupy California, Great Britain will. Mexico, I have heard, has made a secret treaty with England to sell her California. She will use the money to fight us.

FIRST CITIZEN. You may count on the southern states for men, money, and munitions.

UNCLE SAM. No filibustering, Gentlemen. So far, we are a neutral nation and have no quarrel with Mexico.

GENERAL HOUSTON. Then the United States, our mother country, is willing to see us crushed by Mexico.

FIRST CITIZEN. Never!

(*The Mexican Ambassador has pushed his way into the room.*)

MEXICAN AMBASSADOR (*in a loud and angry voice*). The United States knows, I hope, that aiding these rebels (*he waves his hand toward the Texans*) will mean war with my country—ruthless war. We will turn the Indians loose and devastate Texas.

UNCLE SAM (*in a quiet restrained tone*). You threaten, do you? Texas is independent, and we have the right to negotiate a treaty with her if we think it wise.

(*A boy calling, "Papers" is heard in the street. Miss Columbia leans out. Voice is heard again, "Polk elected president! People are for the annexation of Texas!"*

UNCLE SAM. Do you hear that news?

MEXICAN AMBASSADOR. That means war.

TEXANS. Hurrah! Annexation has won!

SECOND CITIZEN. Still more territory added! That means trouble. The country will never be able to handle it.

BOOKKEEPER. More territory, more trouble. War with Mexico will mean higher taxes.

MEXICAN AMBASSADOR. I will send in my papers this afternoon. My country will not rest quiet under this defiance.

MISS COLUMBIA. You may lose more by war than you gain.

FIRST CITIZEN. O, let them fight! Our manifest destiny is a country bounded on the west by the Pacific.

UNCLE SAM (*to the Mexican Ambassador*). Why not let us buy the territory to the Pacific?

MEXICAN AMBASSADOR. Never!

[*Curtain drops to show a lapse of two years*]

The office maps show the addition of Texas.

MISS COLUMBIA. Two years of war!

BOOKKEEPER. Scott has Mexico well beaten. The terms of the treaty are expected at once. All that territory will just add to our size. We're getting much too big.

(*A messenger appears carrying a large envelope with a great red seal on it. As he enters, Uncle Sam comes out from the main office.*)

UNCLE SAM. I have been expecting you.

(*The messenger salutes, hands him the envelope, salutes again, and goes out.*)

UNCLE SAM (*taking a large document from the envelope*). Mexico has accepted our terms. They will cede New Mexico, Utah Territory, and California for $15,000,000, and the United States is to pay all claims that American citizens may have against Mexico.

MISS COLUMBIA. It is a wonderful addition.

UNCLE SAM. Yes, this "infant republic" has had an amazing growth. The settlement of the Oregon dispute will free us from fear of a foreign power shutting us out from the Pacific. We have grown mightily in sixty-five years.

BOOKKEEPER. What will you do with all of this new territory now you've got it? There will never be enough people to settle it.

MISS COLUMBIA. The wagon trains are setting out across the plains each day.

UNCLE SAM. We'll build a railroad presently.

BOOKKEEPER. It can't be done.

MISS COLUMBIA. We've always done the impossible.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

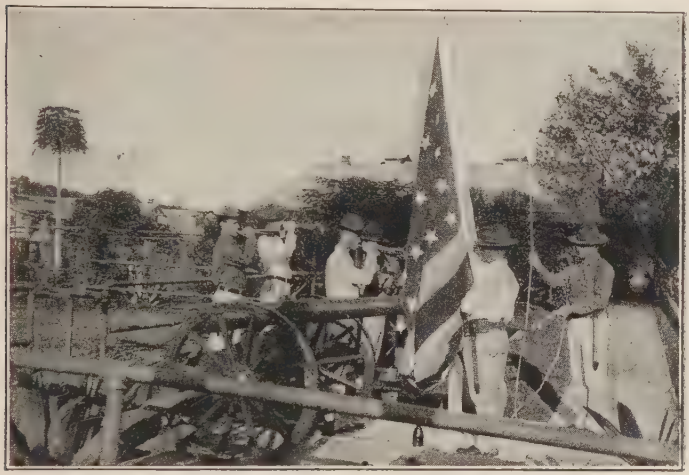
SCENE I

Place: Uncle Sam's Office.
Time: 1898. Further Expansion.

Quill pens, inkpots and sandshaker have given way to fountain pens and desk blotters. Some filing cases stand at the side of the room between Uncle Sam's private office and the door at the right. There are more chairs, not so comfortable as the old ones. A typewriter stands on Miss Columbia's desk and a telephone is on the wall at the left. The map, too, shows the accessions to the United States, including Alaska, Oregon and the Mexican cession.

BOOKKEEPER (*taking up a large package of letters and going to the files*). If those chaps down in Cuba don't settle their differences pretty soon, this office will have to get an assistant bookkeeper. I can't handle all of the complaints that come in from our people whose money is invested in Cuban tobacco and sugar. The revolution is ruining business there.

MISS COLUMBIA. Have you seen the pictures in this morning's paper, showing those horrible concentration camps, where the women, children and old men are kept after they have been driven in from their homes by the Spanish soldiers? They are



THE RAISING OF THE AMERICAN FLAG AT GUANTANAMO BAY, CUBA

starving and dying of disease by the thousands. General Weyler is responsible for that.

BOOKKEEPER. Not entirely. The revolutionists under Gomez ordered all work stopped and plantations destroyed. He said: "IF SPAIN WILL NOT GIVE UP CUBA TO THE CUBANS THE CUBANS THEMSELVES WILL RENDER THE ISLAND SO WORTHLESS AND DESOLATE A POSSESSION THAT SPAIN CANNOT AFFORD TO HOLD IT." Now that General Blanco has withdrawn the order for concentration there is no means of producing food in a ruined land.

MISS COLUMBIA. Spain has learned nothing from history. Great Britain had sense enough to grant her colonies a large measure of self-government after the American Revolution. She learned by experience, but Spain! Through her harsh tyranny, she lost all of her immense possessions in the western

hemisphere excepting Cuba and Porto Rico and she hasn't learned yet that the methods of 1598 will not succeed in 1898.

BOOKKEEPER. The laws of Cuba are made in Madrid and, worst of all, the taxes collected from Cubans are spent to maintain an army to coerce them and for the salaries of Spanish officials who misgovern them. Listen to this paragraph from a letter sent us by an American in Cuba: "THE REVENUE FROM CUBA IN 1895 WAS $26,000,000 AND OF THAT ONLY $1,000,000 WAS SPENT ON EDUCATION AND PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS ON THE ISLAND. THE REST WENT TO SPAIN."

MISS COLUMBIA. Outrageous!

BOOKKEEPER. And now this latest revolution has ruined our trade with Cuba. $100,000,000 a year lost because THE PEARL OF THE ANTILLES has become a place of wretchedness and ruin.

(*Uncle Sam and two members of the Foreign Relations Committee of the Senate enter, talking.*)

UNCLE SAM. Sending the Maine to Havana Harbor was not altogether wise. Our consul, Fitzhugh Lee, asked that her sailing be delayed so that we should not seem to threaten Spain.

SECOND MEMBER. She was needed to protect our Americans in Havana.

FIRST MEMBER. The feeling against Americans is strong, for our sympathies have been outspokenly on the side of the Cuban revolutionists.

(*The telephone rings. The Bookkeeper takes off the receiver while the conversation goes on.*)

UNCLE SAM. Conditions in Cuba have always

affected us very seriously. She is the doorstep to North America.

BOOKKEEPER. Yes, Land Office of Uncle Sam. The secretary of state wishes to speak with him? Hold the wire a minute. (*He turns to the gentlemen*). Secretary Sherman wishes to speak to you.

UNCLE SAM. Excuse me, gentlemen. (*He goes to telephone.*) Good morning, Mr. Secretary. A cable? The Maine? (*All those present listen intently.*) Two hundred sixty-four men and two officers killed?

FIRST MEMBER. This will mean war!

UNCLE SAM (*still at telephone*). Captain Sigsbee asks "THAT PUBLIC OPINION BE SUSPENDED UNTIL FURTHER REPORT."

MISS COLUMBIA. This is too horrible.

UNCLE SAM (*still talking at telephone*). The Spanish Minister promises every reparation if Spain be at fault. The President will authorize a Board of Inquiry at once.

SECOND MEMBER. The American people will never be convinced that the Maine was not blown up by Spain, either by an official order or by some Spanish don who wanted to be revenged for our unofficial aid to the Cuban revolutionists.

UNCLE SAM (*still at telephone*). I'll see you shortly, Mr. Secretary. Good-bye. (*He hangs up the receiver.*)

BOOKKEEPER. Do you think there'll be war?

UNCLE SAM. I'm afraid so. "In the name of humanity, in the name of civilization, in behalf of endangered American interests, which give us the right and the duty to speak and to act, the war in Cuba must stop.

(*There is a knock at the door. The Bookkeeper opens it and a group of six ambassadors come in.*)

UNCLE SAM. Come in, gentlemen. What can I do for you? (*They bow, clicking their heels together.*)

FIRST AMBASSADOR. We represent six of the nations of continental Europe.

SECOND AMBASSADOR. WE HOPE FOR HUMANITY'S SAKE THAT YOU WILL NOT GO TO WAR.

UNCLE SAM. WE HOPE THAT IF WE DO GO TO WAR, YOU WILL UNDERSTAND THAT IT IS FOR HUMANITY'S SAKE.

[*Curtain drops to indicate a lapse of time*]

SCENE II

Place: Same as Scene I.
Time: Later.

Map has been changed to a map of the hemispheres. A long ruler lies on the desk.

MISS COLUMBIA (*to the Bookkeeper*). Where is Guam?

BOOKKEEPER. Never heard of it till Captain Glass took it.

UNCLE SAM (*very busy at his desk going over despatches*). Our navy's done wonderful work. Dewey sank the Spanish fleet at Manila without the loss of a man. Now Sampson and Schley have destroyed Cervera's fleet at Santiago.

BOOKKEEPER. Fine commanders, all of them. Where's Guam, and who are the Ladrones?

UNCLE SAM (*laughing*). The Ladrones are not "who"—they're "what." (*He gets up and taking the ruler indicates the Ladrone Islands.*) Guam is one of

the Ladrones. Ferdinand Magellan and his men landed there, and while the Spanish named them the Mariana Islands after the wife of the Spanish king, the men who discovered them, having had a sad experience with the natives, gave them the nickname of "Islas de los Ladrones, the Islands of Thieves." Guam is right here (*pointing*).

BOOKKEEPER. Right in a line with Hawaii and the Philippines.

MISS COLUMBIA. They seem a long way from anywhere.

UNCLE SAM. They are so far from anywhere that Captain Glass had an amusing experience when he went to take possession of Guam.

BOOKKEEPER. What happened?

UNCLE SAM. He bombarded the fort at Santa Cruz, but got no response from the Spanish guns. They were perfectly silent. Presently the Captain of the port and the health officer came off in boats flying the Spanish flag and came aboard the "Charleston." "YOUR PARDON, CAPTAIN, BUT IF WE MIGHT BORROW SOME POWDER, WE WOULD GLADLY RETURN YOUR SALUTE," said the Captain of the port, with a deep bow, "PRAY DO NOT THINK US DISCOURTEOUS, BUT SO FEW FLEETS VISIT US THAT WE ARE NOT ACCUSTOMED TO RECEIVE SALUTES, AND WE HAVE NO POWDER. WE TRUST YOUR HEALTH IS GOOD AND THE HEALTH OF YOUR FLEET AND WE BEG TO ASSURE YOU, SENOR CAPTAIN, THAT IF WE MAY BORROW THE POWDER FOR THE TWO OLD GUNS ASHORE, IT WILL HONOR US TO RETURN YOUR SALUTE."

"SALUTE!" exclaimed Captain Glass, "I FIRED NO

SALUTE. I FIRED SHOTTED GUNS! UNDERSTAND ME, SIR, THE UNITED STATES IS AT WAR WITH SPAIN. MY SALUTE, AS YOU CALL IT, WAS A BOMBARDMENT, AND YOU GENTLEMEN MUST CONSIDER YOURSELVES PRISONERS OF WAR."

(*Bookkeeper and Miss Columbia laugh.*)

MISS COLUMBIA. I suppose that Spain had not yet notified them that war had been declared.

BOOKKEEPER. Very deliberate, those Spanish! I wonder what the news will be from Manila? The Germans seem to have been behaving rather badly.

MISS COLUMBIA. Great Britain's on our side.

UNCLE SAM. Yes, I'm glad to say.

(*A knock. The Bookkeeper opens the door. Two members of the Foreign Relations Committee enter, smiling.*)

FIRST MEMBER. Good news. Manila has surrendered.

BOOKKEEPER. Hurrah for Dewey!

SECOND MEMBER. You know this war is being fought by some very energetic men.

BOOKKEEPER. Yes. Take Roosevelt! He and his Rough Riders, and the 1st and 10th Regulars, and the 7th, 12th and 17th Infantry with Generals Lawton and Chaffee in command were not what one would call lazy at El Caney and San Juan Hill. In fact, all of our men have given an excellent account of themselves.

MISS COLUMBIA. Can you tell us any of the details of the taking of Manila?

FIRST MEMBER. I do not know very much. Dewey sailed in to the attack while the English and

© Brown Bros.

THE BATTLE OF MANILA BAY.

the German fleets were drawn up in battle order. The bands on the English ships were playing "The Star-Spangled Banner" to show friendship for us.

UNCLE SAM. Actions speak louder than words.

BOOKKEEPER. There has been plenty of action in the six months since war was declared on April 24. I hope that none of you people in Congress are planning to annex Cuba. We're big enough already. Besides, we said: "CUBA IS AND OF RIGHT OUGHT TO BE FREE AND INDEPENDENT."

UNCLE SAM. We'll help Cuba establish herself and then withdraw.

FIRST MEMBER. Europe does not believe we'll ever get out of Cuba. (*Telephone rings. Miss Columbia answers.*)

MISS COLUMBIA. State Department calling? He

has! How splendid! Yes, they're here. At once? Oh! Good-bye!

BOOKKEEPER (*growling*). What is it? Why couldn't you talk so we could understand?

MISS COLUMBIA. Hush! (*She turns to the two members of the Committee and Uncle Sam.*) We have been negotiating with Spain for the protection of our citizens and a greater degree of self-government for Cuba so that these revolutions will stop, but so far only broken promises have followed our negotiations. But, at last, Spain has asked the French Ambassador: "TO LEARN THE BASIS AND ENDING TO BE MADE TO THE UNREASONABLE CONTINUANCE OF STRIFE."

FIRST MEMBER. That means peace.

UNCLE SAM. Thank God.

BOOKKEEPER. What terms are you going to ask?

SECOND MEMBER. Spain is to relinquish all rights in Cuba.

FIRST MEMBER. She must give us Porto Rico and Guam, and all of the small islands she owns in the Carribean.

BOOKKEEPER. That's fair, except for Guam. We don't want any of those Pacific Islands. We refused to annex Hawaii when she asked us to take her in.

UNCLE SAM. We'll take her now, for we're going to pay Spain $20,000,000 for the Philippines.

BOOKKEEPER. The country's gone crazy. We'll be an empire with colonies thousands of miles away. Why, our forefathers would turn in their graves. Washington said:

"BEWARE OF ENTANGLING ALLIANCES."

We'll get into as many entanglements as a kitten with a ball of yarn, if we take the Philippines and all those other islands in the Pacific.

MISS COLUMBIA. And that isn't the worst, we'll have to dig the Canal now.

UNCLE SAM (*to Bookkeeper*). Cheer up, look at that map. (*He points to the hemispheres*). We've grown in a little over a hundred years, and each piece of territory we have acquired has strengthened us and we've improved it.

MISS COLUMBIA. What more do you want?

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: The same office.
Time: 1904–1914. The Panama Canal.

A map of the hemispheres hangs on the wall. Across the Isthmus of Panama two red lines are drawn. A telephone stands on the bookkeeper's desk, a typewriter on Miss Columbia's. More filing cabinets have been added. The room, in short, has been furnished like a modern office. Miss Columbia is straightening things on her desk. The Bookkeeper takes up the morning paper.

MISS COLUMBIA. At what time do you expect the President and Secretary of State?

BOOKKEEPER. I don't know. I'm waiting for a telephone message. (*He rustles the paper in turning the sheets.*) You know Americans are energetic. This Panama Canal project, which has been started looks as though it might be a success.

MISS COLUMBIA. Balboa crossed the Isthmus in 1513 and Charles the Fifth of Spain had it surveyed for a waterway between the two oceans in 1534.

BOOKKEEPER (*looking up from his paper*). Oh, yes other nations have tried to dig that Panama ditch, but when Americans start things they usually finish them.

(*Uncle Sam has come into the room from the private office unseen by the other two.*)

UNCLE SAM. That's a thoroughly conceited speech.

MISS COLUMBIA. He doesn't often say things that are complimentary about his fellow countrymen, so let's not scold him for this.

BOOKKEEPER. Of course I don't approve of the way in which the United States encouraged Panama to revolt and landed marines—(*the outside door of the office is opened as the Bookkeeper makes his last speech, President Roosevelt standing unnoticed in the doorway comes into the room, followed by John Hay, Secretary of State*).

ROOSEVELT. That's a base slander and I'm tired of hearing it repeated by people who don't know what they are talking about. (*He drops into a chair and glares at the Bookkeeper, who also looks thoroughly enraged.*)

BOOKKEEPER. Do you mean to tell me that the United States Gunboat Nashville, under Hubbard, didn't land marines at Colon and that they didn't interfere with the action of the Colombian troops?

ROOSEVELT (*emphatically*). No, he would have failed in his duty if he hadn't, for the "action"

ordered by the Commander of the Colombian Regiment was the massacre of the foreign inhabitants of Colon, including American women and children.

BOOKKEEPER. Oh—that's different. I got my information from the papers.

SECRETARY OF STATE. Now you're getting your information from the man who made the Canal possible.

ROOSEVELT. I tell you again, "THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES NEVER TOOK THE SMALLEST PART DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY IN FOMENTING OR ENCOURAGING ANY REVOLUTIONARY MOVEMENT IN PANAMA."

BOOKKEEPER. Of course, if you say so, Mr. President.

ROOSEVELT (*pounding the table*). I do say so.

UNCLE SAM. Colombia promised to sell us the ten mile strip we needed for the canal for $10,000,000 and $250,000 a year subsidy. Didn't she?

SECRETARY OF STATE. Yes, and then when the French, who had spent $262,000,000 in trying to build a canal and failed, had sold us their concession for $40,000,000 Moroquin, the Dictator of Colombia, announced that the concession to the French had been illegal, so that Colombia would take possession of the French holdings on the Isthmus.

ROOSEVELT. "I HAD EXHAUSTED EVERY HONORABLE EXPEDIENT IN TRYING TO GET COLOMBIA TO COME TO AN AGREEMENT WITH MY GOVERNMENT WHICH COULD BE CARRIED OUT. I COULDN'T DO IT FOR THE SIMPLE REASON THAT YOU CAN'T NAIL CURRANT JELLY TO A

© World Wide Photos, N. Y.

NAVAL AND MERCANTILE VESSELS PASSING THROUGH LOCKS IN THE PANAMA CANAL

WALL. THE TROUBLE IS NOT IN THE NAIL. IT IS IN THE CURRANT JELLY."

SECRETARY OF STATE. All this time Panama was seething with revolution on the "consent of the governed" theory. Panama was entitled to govern itself, for it had been independent twice before. In 1841 and in 1857 they had separated from Colombia.

ROOSEVELT. "THERE WERE A DOZEN FUSES ALWAYS BURNING AND LEADING UP TO REVOLUTIONARY EXPLOSIONS IN PANAMA. I ORDERED WARSHIPS TO THE ISTHMUS TO PROTECT PERSONS AND PROPERTY THERE. IN DOING THAT I WAS FOLLOWING THE PRECEDENT SET BY EVERY PRESIDENT WHOSE PRESIDENCY COVERED A TERM OF YEARS. MEANWHILE THE REVOLUTION WENT ON. NO BLOOD WAS SHED, EXCEPTING WHEN A COLOMBIAN GUNBOAT CAME UP THE

PACIFIC AND BOMBARDED PANAMA, KILLING A DISINTERESTED CHINESE, WHO WAS LOOKING ON AT THE REVOLUTION."

MISS COLUMBIA. Poor Chinese!

UNCLE SAM. Building the Panama Canal and controlling it was our MANIFEST DESTINY. The Christobel sails through to-day, doesn't she? (*Telephone rings, Bookkeeper takes off the receiver.*)

BOOKKEEPER. General Goethals calling.

ROOSEVELT (*going hastily to the telephone and taking the receiver*). Congratulations, General, the nation should be grateful to you this day. Gorgas, you say? Of course, bring him up. You two are the heroes of this occasion. (*President hangs up the receiver.*) General Goethals and General Gorgas are coming up.

MISS COLUMBIA. They are heroes of peace.

SECRETARY OF STATE. Yes, my dear, but they had a deal of fighting to do. General Goethals fought landslides, rushing streams, and rock mountains. Gorgas fought disease. (*An office boy opens the door.*)

OFFICE BOY. General Goethals, General Gorgas. (*The two generals come in, the President shakes hands violently with Goethals while Uncle Sam greets Gorgas.*)

UNCLE SAM. Gentlemen, I take it as very kind of you to call in to-day.

GENERAL GOETHALS (*smiling*). We've come to report progress.

ROOSEVELT. I should say so.

SECRETARY OF STATE. You've made the dirt fly.

GENERAL GOETHALS. Yes, enough to have dug a tunnel twelve feet square right through the earth at the Equator.

GENERAL GORGAS. The interesting part of this ditch is that it's really a bridge of water, for it is higher than the two oceans it connects. That is the reason we had to build a lock canal.

ROOSEVELT. The Canal is forty-one miles long and it cost nearly $10,000,000 a mile to build.

BOOKKEEPER. What have we got for our money?

ROOSEVELT. We've shortened most of the trade routes of the world. When the Oregon had to sail around the Horn during the war with Spain, we learned that 8,000 miles made a good deal of difference in a sea voyage, beside that the freight rates have been very much reduced.

UNCLE SAM. Every country that borders on either ocean is brought closer to the markets of the world.

BOOKKEEPER. We ought to make a good deal of money from tolls, but I suppose we'll have to spend all we make in fortifying the Canal and buying the Danish West Indies to protect it.

UNCLE SAM. We'll make nothing on tolls. By a treaty with Great Britain we have agreed to treat the shipping of all nations alike. That gives us no advantage. The tolls only serve to pay off the bonds and keep the Canal in repair.

MISS COLUMBIA. Quite decent of us, I call it.

ROOSEVELT. The Canal couldn't have been built at all without this man (*he slaps Gorgas on the back*).

GENERAL GOETHALS. You know the most important work was not to make the dirt fly, though that was the popular phrase.

BOOKKEEPER. Well, I'd like to know what was more important.

GENERAL GORGAS (*he leans over and slaps a mosquito that has alighted on the Bookkeeper's hand*). Killing mosquitoes.

BOOKKEEPER (*flicking the dead mosquito off his hand and looking up in astonishment*). No?

GENERAL GORGAS. Yes, we found out that people got malaria and yellow fever from the bite of certain kinds of mosquitoes, so we spent two years in getting rid of all of the mosquito breeding places in and around the Canal Zone.

BOOKKEEPER. Two years?

GENERAL GORGAS. Yes, you know it was mosquitoes that defeated the French attempt, when over two thousand died of yellow fever.

ROOSEVELT. We have just begun to learn that anyone who uses his energies in fighting disease is just as much a hero and a patriot as he who dies on the battlefield. The little group of army doctors, soldiers and nurses who experimented with yellow fever in Cuba, were as brave a set of patriots as this country has ever produced.

UNCLE SAM. I move we all stand in reverent salute as the President names the men who were willing to die that others might live.

(*All stand.*)

ROOSEVELT. Walter Reed, James Carroll, Jesse W. Lazear, Aristide Agrimonte, John R. Kissengen, John J. Moran. (*There is a moment of silence as all stand with bowed heads. Then the sound of marching feet and voices singing, "Columbia the Gem of the Ocean" floats in through the window. Miss Columbia goes to the window, looks out.*)

MISS COLUMBIA. There's a whole procession coming. They seem to be making this way. (*The President, Gorgas and Goethals stand by the window looking out, the President between the two Generals. The crowd outside begin to clap and cheer. There are cries of "Roosevelt" "Gorgas" "Goethals" "Speech—speech."*)

UNCLE SAM. Mr. President, that's a call for you.

ROOSEVELT (*stepping a little forward toward the window*). "FELLOW CITIZENS, THE PANAMA CANAL IS AN ACCOMPLISHED FACT. SINCE BALBOA DISCOVERED THE ISTHMUS, NEARLY FOUR CENTURIES AGO, PEOPLE HAVE TALKED ABOUT BUILDING A CANAL ACROSS IT, BUT THE UNITED STATES HAS TURNED A DREAM INTO A REALITY. I FEEL THAT IT IS THE DUTY OF EVERY MAN IN PUBLIC LIFE WHO HAS TO DEAL WITH THE HONOR OF HIS NATION TO DEAL WITH IT AS HE WOULD WITH HIS OWN . . . THE MAN IN PUBLIC LIFE WHO DOES HIS FULL DUTY IN INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS IS BOUND TO SEE THAT HIS NATION BEARS ITSELF TOWARD OTHER NATIONS AS WE EXPECT AN HONORABLE MAN TO BEAR HIMSELF IN DEALING WITH HIS FELLOWS: THAT HE SHALL PLAY THE PART OF NEITHER BULLY NOR COWARD: THAT HE SHALL ACT AS A JUST MAN WHO SCORNS TO WRONG OTHERS AND WHO IS ABLE BY HIS OWN STRENGTH AND COURAGE TO PREVENT OTHERS FROM WRONGING HIM. THERE IS NOT AN ACTION OF THE AMERICAN GOVERNMENT IN CONNECTION WITH FOREIGN AFFAIRS . . . SO IMPORTANT AS THE ACTION TAKEN BY THIS GOVERNMENT IN CONNECTION WITH THE ACQUISITION AND BUILDING OF THE PANAMA CANAL. I KNOW THAT IN THE COURSE OF THAT ACTION EVERY STEP TAKEN WAS A STEP NOT ONLY DEMANDED

BY THE HONOR AND INTEREST OF (THIS) COUNTRY BUT ONE TAKEN WITH SCRUPULOUS REGARD TO THE NICEST LAWS OF INTERNATIONAL MORALITY AND FAIR AND UPRIGHT DEALING.

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. What suggestion is proposed in the prologue in order to pay off the French debt and the soldiers of the continental army?
2. How did the states greet that suggestion?
3. On what conditions do the states decide to give up their claims to the crown lands?
4. What is meant by the Louisiana Purchase? When was it made? How much did it cost?
5. Why was the port of New Orleans so important to the Mississippi region?
6. Why was the acquisition of Florida from Spain now inevitable?
7. What was the dispute with the British about Oregon?
8. Why do the people of Texas wish to be admitted into the Union? What reasons were advanced against admission?
9. When were Mexico, Utah Territory and California added to the United States? How much was paid for them?
10. Tell what you know of Spain's government in Cuba.
11. How did the United States get into the war?
12. In what way did the United States succeed in building the Panama Canal when other attempts had failed? Who were the heroes?
13. Give a five minute talk on the United States as a World Power.
14. What character do you like best in the play, Manifest Destiny? Why?
15. Which character would you wish to play? Why?

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Look up the Constitution of the United States and see if any provision was made for acquiring new territory. How did Jefferson solve the problem?

2. Draw maps of the United States showing the territory in 1787. In 1803. In 1819. In 1836. In 1848. In 1898. In 1926.

3. Write a composition on an imaginary trip through the Panama Canal from Colon to Panama.

4. Describe the flag of the United States, with sketches, that might represent the United States in each act of the play, Manifest Destiny.

5. Name some of the engineering feats involved in constructing the Panama Canal.

6. Make a sketch of a mosquito and show it is a carrier of disease.

7. Read an account of the purchase of Alaska. Following the plan given on page 323, "How to Write an Historical Play," write a scene on the purchase of Alaska, using as the setting Uncle Sam's office and utilizing the Bookkeeper, Miss Columbia, Uncle Sam, and other characters you may find in the account you read.

A House Divided

The Civil War

CHARACTERS

The Chronicler
Philip Owen
Mrs. Owen
Robert Owen
Margaret Owen
Gideon
Mammy Maria
First Girl
Second Girl
First Young Man
Second Young Man
Third Young Man
Father Time
First Soldier
Second Soldier
Third Soldier
*Abraham Lincoln
Billy Adams
Jimmy Sedden
Tom Latimer
Captain Page
Joe Hunter
*General Lee
*General Pendleton
*General Fitzhugh Lee
*General Gordon
*General Longstreet
First Prisoner
Second Prisoner
*Colonel Venable
*Colonel Peyton
Wounded Man
Orderly
*General Grant
*General Meade
*Mr. Washburne

*Leading historical characters. The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

THE CHRONICLER. WHAT IS THAT UNION? A CONFEDERATION OF STATES EQUAL IN SOVEREIGNTY CAPABLE OF EVERYTHING WHICH THE CONSTITUTION DOES NOT FORBID, OR AUTHORIZE CONGRESS TO FORBID. IT IS AN EQUAL UNION BETWEEN PARTIES EQUALLY SOVEREIGN. THEY WERE SOVEREIGN INDEPENDENTLY OF THE UNION. THE OBJECT OF THE UNION WAS COMMON PROTECTION FOR THE EXERCISE OF ALREADY EXISTING SOVEREIGNTY.—*William Pinckney.*

THIS LEADS US TO INQUIRE INTO THE ORIGIN OF THIS GOVERNMENT AND THE SOURCE OF ITS POWER. WHOSE AGENT IS IT? IS IT THE CREATURE OF THE STATE LEGISLATURES, OR IS IT THE CREATURE OF THE PEOPLE? IT IS, SIR, THE PEOPLE'S CONSTITUTION, THE PEOPLE'S GOVERNMENT, MADE FOR THE PEOPLE AND ANSWERABLE TO THE PEOPLE. THE PEOPLE . . . HAVE DECLARED THAT THE CONSTITUTION SHALL BE THE SUPREME LAW. BUT THE STATE LEGISLATURES, AS POLITICAL BODIES, HOWEVER SOVEREIGN, ARE YET NOT SOVEREIGN OVER THE PEOPLE.—*Webster.*

ACT I

SCENE I

Place: The Sitting room in the Owen House, a fine old colonial mansion set in beautiful lawns, shaded by great trees.

Time: Morning, April 15, 1861.

The room is large. At the back three long windows open on a porch. At the right a large double door leads into the rest of the house. At the left is a fireplace, above which hangs a portrait of a soldier in the uniform of a colonial officer. Under the portrait are two crossed swords. Beside the window to the left is a small round mahogany table on which stands a vase of daffodils, some books, and a work basket. Mrs. Owen sits beside this table in a high backed mahogany chair. Between the middle window and the window on the right stands an old mahogany desk at which Robert Owen is sitting, with some books in front of him, writing. On a hair-cloth sofa between the window and the double

doors, Philip Owen, dressed in riding clothes, is reading a paper.

Philip (*moving impatiently and throwing down the paper*). Gideon hasn't brought the mail yet. I wonder what the latest news is.

Mrs. Owen. I hope the President has not persisted in sending a ship loaded with ammunition to Charleston.

Robert. Fort Sumter is a federal fort. Major Anderson has a right to expect that he will be furnished with food for his men.

Philip. South Carolina is no longer a part of the Union. For the United States Government to send a naval vessel there would be an act of invasion.

Mrs. Owen. An act of war.

Robert. The cotton states can't secede. The Ordinance of Secession isn't worth the paper it's written on. The Union cannot be dissolved without the consent of all the states.

Philip. Rubbish! The Union is a federation of free and sovereign states, any one of which can leave the others when it chooses. You can't seem to see——

Robert. Daniel Webster said that the Union was not a league of states but a solemn agreement made by the people of the United States "LIBERTY AND UNION, NOW AND FOREVER, ONE AND INSEPARABLE."

Philip. Webster was a Yankee. I wish father had not sent you North for your education—their point of view is so different. Some of their ideas seem to have infected you. (*Philip glares at Robert and speaks angrily.*)

MRS. OWEN. Philip, do not use that quarrelsome tone. Let us argue this matter without anger.

ROBERT. Father felt as I do. (*He turns directly toward Philip.*) And a certain gentleman from South Carolina who could never be accused of being an abolitionist once gave the toast, "THE FEDERAL UNION, IT MUST AND SHALL BE PRESERVED."

(*As Robert starts to quote Jackson's famous toast, Margaret Owen comes from the porch through the window, her arms full of spring flowers.*)

MARGARET. Good old Andrew Jackson! I wish he had been president, instead of Buchanan. There would have been no Secession, and this horrible fear——

(*The door opens and an old negro servant, Gideon, comes in with letters and a paper. Philip springs up, interrupting Margaret.*)

PHILIP. Give me the paper. (*He takes the paper from the servant who goes over to Robert.*)

GIDEON. Here's de mail, Marsa Robert, and Marsa Robert,——

PHILIP. It has come! The first shot has been fired.

MRS. OWEN. How terrible!

MARGARET. What happened?

ROBERT (*silently going over to his brother and reading the paper over his shoulder*). Yesterday Fort Sumter was fired upon by the batteries in Charleston Harbor. Major Anderson is, however, still in possession of the fort. No further information could be obtained before going to press.

Gideon, did you hear any news in the town?

Gideon. Yes, Marsa Robert! De folks say dat de President sent down a boat to Charleston wif guns for de fort, and dat de Charleston folks got so mad dey fired on de fort, and dat dere's suah to be wah!

Margaret. I shall nurse in the hospitals.

Philip. The people of Charleston have struck the first blow for liberty. They are carrying out the principles that were established by the revolution.

Mrs. Owen. That your grandfather died to establish.

Robert. The people of the North must fight now, however unwilling they were before.

Philip. They have forced a fight on the seceded states—that is, if the President calls for troops.

Margaret. The President doesn't want war. I cut his inaugural speech out of the paper. (*She opens a drawer of the desk and takes out a newspaper clipping.*)

Mrs. Owen. Neither does the South want war; but they are determined to have their rights. None of the President's speeches has shown any deep and real insight into our southern institutions. President Davis warned him that if the North would not let the South go in peace, "WE WOULD INVOKE THE GOD OF OUR FATHERS, AND PUTTING OUR TRUST IN OUR OWN FIRM HEARTS AND STRONG ARMS, WE WOULD VINDICATE OUR RIGHTS AS BEST WE MAY."

Margaret. But listen to this.

PHILIP. O Meg, we know what the rail-splitter says; it is what he does that is important.

ROBERT. Read it, little sister, we need to hear it again, when even we, who love each other, and have been brought up together, can disagree over the question. Mother and Philip would make war rather than give up state rights; you and I may have to accept war rather than let the Union perish.

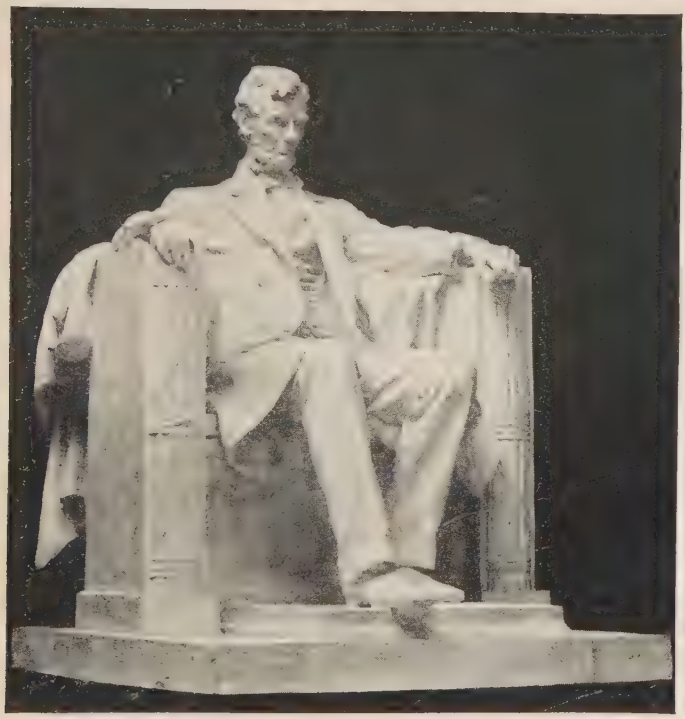
MRS. OWEN. Robert, how dreadful! How can you bear to say that we are divided?

ROBERT. It is the truth, Mother. You know it is.

MARGARET. We don't need to be divided if only we would do as the President wants us to. (*She is half crying as she reads.*) "IN YOUR HANDS, MY DISSATISFIED COUNTRYMEN, AND NOT IN MINE, IS THE MOMENTOUS ISSUE OF CIVIL WAR."——

MRS. OWEN (*interrupting*). Civil war! Brother against brother! (*She looks at her two sons.*)

MARGARET (*continuing*). "THE GOVERNMENT WILL NOT ASSAIL YOU. YOU CAN HAVE NO CONFLICT WITHOUT BEING YOURSELVES THE AGGRESSORS. YOU HAVE NO OATH REGISTERED IN HEAVEN TO DESTROY THE GOVERNMENT, WHILE I SHALL HAVE THE MOST SOLEMN ONE TO "PRESERVE, PROTECT, AND DEFEND" IT. I AM LOATH TO CLOSE. WE ARE NOT ENEMIES, BUT FRIENDS. WE MUST NOT BE ENEMIES. THOUGH PASSION MAY HAVE STRAINED, IT MUST NOT BREAK OUR BONDS OF AFFECTION. THE MYSTIC CHORDS OF MEMORY, STRETCHING FROM EVERY BATTLEFIELD AND PATRIOT GRAVE TO EVERY LIVING HEART AND HEARTHSTONE ALL OVER THIS BROAD LAND, WILL YET SWELL THE CHORUS OF THE UNION WHEN AGAIN



Courtesy Daniel Chester French

The Statue of Abraham Lincoln in the Lincoln Memorial, Washington, D. C.

TOUCHED, AS SURELY THEY MUST BE, BY THE BETTER ANGELS OF OUR NATURE."

PHILIP. In other words, the South is to be forced to remain in the Union.

ROBERT. There will be no necessity for force if the South will only listen to reason, and——

PHILIP. Reason! Did your northern friends listen to any reason when they encouraged John Brown

to incite the slaves to rise up against their masters? The North struck the first blow then, contradict me if I am incorrect.

ROBERT. No, not the North, but a group of people whose anger against slavery made them act very unwisely.

PHILIP. You excuse them?

MARGARET. The Government had nothing to do with John Brown's raid——

ROBERT. And John Brown was hanged, poor misguided fanatic.

MRS. OWEN. He really helped slavery, for the State of Virginia was about to free her slaves when John Brown attacked Harper's Ferry.

ROBERT. There isn't much use in discussing that. What Virginia does now is the important thing. The cotton states can't secede by themselves, but if Virginia and the other slave states join them, there will be a long and bitter war.

MARGARET. O, I can't bear it, I can't bear it! (*She hides her face in her arm.*)

ROBERT. Don't cry, dear. Ride with me down to the station. Perhaps some news has come in by telegraph.

PHILIP (*patting her shoulder*). O please stop, little sister! I'll go too.

MRS. OWEN. Come back as soon as you can. I'm much worried and anxious.

MARGARET. I think I'll stay with mother.

(*The curtain goes down to indicate the passage of several hours.*)

[*Curtain*]

Scene II

Place: The Sitting Room in the Owen House.
Time: Evening of the Same Day.

Mrs. Owen (*to Margaret who comes through the door*). Has neither of the boys come back yet?

Margaret. They must have ridden to the town. They will get more news there. O Mother, think of Philip and Robert fighting——

Mrs. Owen. I can think of nothing else. The most terrible part is——

Margaret. Don't say it, Mother! Listen! I hear horses coming.

(*There is a sound of hoof beats, then Philip's voice calling:* "Gideon! Gideon!")

Gideon (*outside*). Comin', Mars' Philip, comin'.

Philip (*coming in through the window*). Has Robert come back? There was a rumor that the President had called for troops. Robert rode into town to get more news, and I went over to the Carys' to see if they had any information. I'll have to get back to the Academy at once. No one knows what may happen.

Mrs. Owen. Did Major Cary think that Virginia would secede?

Philip. He said that all the slave states would leave the Union if the Federal Government uses force.

Margaret. There's someone coming up the drive. (*She goes to the window and calls.*) Robert, is that you?

(*Robert comes in looking very pale and tired.*)

MRS. OWEN. What have you heard?

ROBERT. War has come. The President called for troops, seventy-five thousand, this morning. Here's the proclamation: "WHEREAS, THE LAWS OF THE UNITED STATES HAVE BEEN FOR SOME TIME PAST, AND ARE NOW OPPOSED, AND THE EXECUTION THEREOF OBSTRUCTED BY COMBINATIONS TOO POWERFUL TO BE SUPPRESSED BY THE ORDINARY COURSE OF THE JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS, OR IN THE POWERS VESTED IN THE MARSHALS BY LAW, THEREFORE, I, ABRAHAM LINCOLN, PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES, IN VIRTUE OF THE POWER IN ME VESTED BY THE CONSTITUTION AND THE LAWS, HAVE THOUGHT IT FIT TO CALL FORTH, AND DO HEREBY CALL FORTH THE MILITIA OF THE SEVERAL STATES OF THE UNION TO THE AGGREGATE NUMBER OF 75,000, IN ORDER TO SUPPRESS SAID COMBINATION, AND CAUSE THE LAWS TO BE DULY EXECUTED." Mother, I——

MRS. OWEN. No, no, Robert, you wouldn't fight against your own kin——

ROBERT. I must. The Union that great grandfather lost his life to establish in the revolution, must be maintained.

PHILIP. If you fight for the North, I'll fight for the South.

(*He stares defiantly at Robert.*)

MARGARET (*crying*). My brothers fighting against each other——

ROBERT. Don't feel that way, Phil, I'm not going to fight for the North, I'm going to help the President preserve the Union. "A house divided against itself cannot stand." (*He goes over and lays his hand on*

Philip's shoulder.) Don't let us quarrel. We may oppose each other in this wretched business, but you are my brother, not a southerner.

Philip (*his look of hard defiance fading*). That's true. The war won't last long. We'll teach you fellows that you can't browbeat us into submission; that we are free and sovereign states. Then we will live peaceably side by side.

Robert (*repeating*). "A house divided against itself cannot stand." I do not expect the house to fall, but I do expect that it will cease to be divided."

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Scene I

Place: The Sitting Room of the Owen House.
Time: December 31, 1862. The action continues into January 1, 1863.

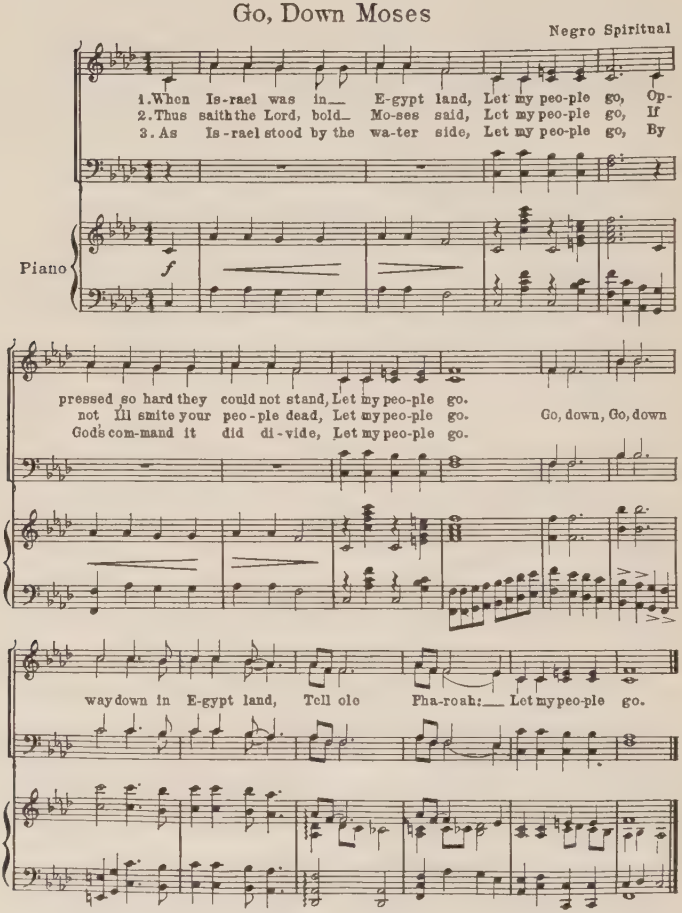
The room is decorated with Christmas greens and lit by lamps. The candles have not yet been lighted.

Gideon (*singing*). "When Israel was in Egypt land."* (*Mammy Maria joins in on the chorus, "Let my people go." Both sing very softly.*)

Gideon (*putting down the wood he is carrying*). This seems like old times. It's the first real party they's been in this family since Mars' Philip and Mars' Robert went off to de war.

Mammy Maria (*going over to the fire-place and looking at the empty space under the portrait where the*

*See page 258.


Go, Down Moses
Negro Spiritual
1. When Is-rael was in E-gypt land, Let my peo-ple go, Op-
2. Thus saith the Lord, bold Mo-ses said, Let my peo-ple go, If
3. As Is-rael stood by the wa-ter side, Let my peo-ple go, By
Piano
f
pressed so hard they could not stand, Let my peo-ple go.
not I'll smite your peo-ple dead, Let my peo-ple go.
God's com-mand it did di-vide, Let my peo-ple go.
Go, down, Go, down
way down in E-gypt land, Tell ole Pha-roah: Let my peo-ple go.

swords had hung). I'll be mighty glad when de old general's swords is back in their place again.

GIDEON. If those Seceshs don't lay down their arms, Mars' Lincoln's goin' to free all de slaves.

Dere won't be anything to fight about. He's goin' to strike off our bonds.

Mammy Maria. What foolishness you're talkin', Gideon! You ain't had no bonds on you any more den I has fo' de las' thirty years, since Miss Julia brought you and me up from Charleston when she married Mars' John Owen. He wouldn't hab no slaves on his place. Talk sense when you talks.

Gideon. I knows a'm free, Maria, but our people are bearin' de yoke, an' livin' in de house of bondage, an' I feels fur 'em.

Mammy Maria. Yes, I feels fur 'em too, but some of 'em's goin' to be wus off when they's turned loose than when they's gittin' their cornmeal and merlasses regular from de big house.

(*Mrs. Owen has come in unperceived by the two servants.*)

Mrs. Owen. You know, Gideon and Maria, that the President's proclamation hasn't freed all the slaves, only those in the part of the Union held by the Confederates.

Gideon. That seems mighty queer to me. How cum he can free the slaves in the Confederate States where they won't let 'em go, and the slaves in the Union stays slaves? That don't sound like sense to me.

Mammy Maria. Cause it don't sound like sense to you—you ain't got no sense.

Margaret (*who has come into the room*). Mammy Maria, what are you saying to Uncle Gideon? Of course he has sense. He plays the fiddle better than anybody else in this country.

GIDEON. Now, Miss Margaret! (*He makes a bow and laughs.*)

MAMMY MARIA (*laughing too*). Don't take no sense to play the fiddle, but these here questions lak abolition——

MRS. OWEN. Slavery has not been abolished. Mr. Lincoln, as commander-in-chief of the army, has issued the Emancipation Proclamation to help the North win the war. England won't help the South now by breaking the blockade.

GIDEON. Yes, Miss Julia, 'mancipation's what I mean.

MAMMY MARIA. Gideon doesn't know what he means, but I means him to come along back in de pantry with me so the quality'll have some proper eatments when this here Happy New Year do come.

(*The two servants go out. Mrs. Owen stands looking out through the window. Margaret goes over to her.*)

MRS. OWEN. I wonder where Philip and Robert are. Only one letter from Philip since he left us——

MARGARET. Wouldn't it be wonderful if Robert should come in to-night? We can't hope to see Philip. (*She begins to cry.*) I hate this war. I want my brothers back.

(*Philip Owen appears at the long window and taps.*)

MRS. OWEN (*turning sharply*). Philip!

MARGARET (*dashing to the window and opening it*). Philip!

(*Mrs. Owen and Margaret draw Philip into the room.*)

PHILIP (*with an arm around each*). You precious people! My! Home does look good.

(*Margaret pushes up a chair a little closer to the fire. Mrs. Owen still keeps hold of Philip.*)

Mrs. Owen. Is it safe for you to be here?

Philip. No, but I couldn't keep away. I had to see you. My regiment is not many miles from here; so I got leave to get through if I could.

Margaret. O Phil, not as a spy! (*She touches his blue coat.*)

Philip (*indignantly*). And why not? A spy has the most difficult and dangerous work there is—and no glory.

Mrs. Owen. Suppose you were found?

Philip. I've protected myself. (*He takes off the blue coat and shows the Confederate uniform underneath.*) I didn't come for information this time so don't worry.

(*He looks around the room and at his mother and Margaret who are dressed in their best.*) Having a party?

Margaret. Yes. I wish you could come to it.

Mrs. Owen. If only you and Robert were home again!

Philip (*grinning*). I'll come.

Mrs. Owen. O Phil! Would that be wise? Our friends are all—

Margaret. No one would betray you, Philip, but something might happen—

Philip (*laughing*). They won't know I'm here.

Mrs. Owen. Why not?

Philip. Do you remember that Santa Claus wig and whiskers? Why can't I put those on, and Robert's college gown? Then with Gideon's scythe and the old hour glass I'll be a fine Father Time, and I'll vanish when the clock strikes twelve.

MARGARET. Oh what fun!

MRS. OWEN. It's dangerous—

PHILIP. Mother, if you don't give me something to eat—

MRS. OWEN. My poor boy, I'm—

MAMMY MARIA (*coming into the room and seeing Philip*). Bres de Lord—Glory Halleluliah! (*She makes a dash for him.*)

PHILIP (*very gaily*). Howdy, Mammy Maria? (*He pats her on the shoulder.*) Can you feed a starving Confederate officer who has ridden since two o'clock this morning with nothing to eat?

MAMMY MARIA. You come along wif me.

(*Just then sleigh bells are heard.*)

MARGARET (*to Philip and Maria*). Vanish! (*Philip and Maria go out quickly.*) I wonder if that is the Carys.

MRS. OWEN. Or the Pegrams. I hope that Philip won't—

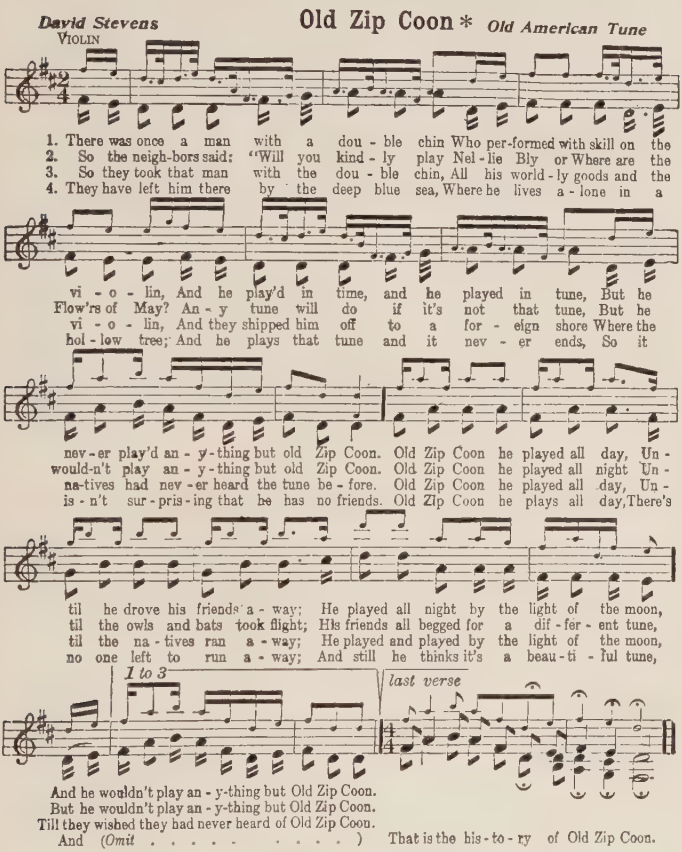
MARGARET. So do I. (*More bells.*) The party seems to be coming.

[*Curtain to indicate a lapse of two hours*]

SCENE II

Place: The Same Room.
Time: Two Hours Later.

The men are all in uniform and many people are standing in couples, dancing a Virginia Reel to the tune of "Old Zip Coon." They sing and clap their hands as well as dance. As the noise dies down, the*

*See page 263.

David Stevens
VIOLIN
Old Zip Coon * Old American Tune
1. There was once a man with a dou - ble chin Who per-formed with skill on the
2. So the neigh-bors said: "Will you kind - ly play Nel - lie Bly or Where are the
3. So they took that man with the dou - ble chin, All his world - ly goods and the
4. They have left him there by the deep blue sea, Where he lives a - lone in a
vi - o - lin, And he play'd in time, and he played in tune, But he
Flow'rs of May? An - y tune will do if it's not that tune, But he
vi - o - lin, And they shipped him off to a for - eign shore Where the
hol - low tree; And he plays that tune and it nev - er ends, So it
nev - er play'd an - y - thing but old Zip Coon. Old Zip Coon he played all day, Un -
would-n't play an - y - thing but old Zip Coon. Old Zip Coon he played all night Un -
na-tives had nev - er heard the tune be - fore. Old Zip Coon he played all day, Un -
is - n't sur - pris - ing that he has no friends. Old Zip Coon he plays all day, There's
til he drove his friends a - way; He played all night by the light of the moon,
til the owls and bats took flight; His friends all begged for a dif - fer - ent tune,
til the na - tives ran a - way; He played and played by the light of the moon,
no one left to run a - way; And still he thinks it's a beau - ti - ful tune,
1 to 3
last verse
And he wouldn't play an - y - thing but Old Zip Coon.
But he wouldn't play an - y - thing but Old Zip Coon.
Till they wished they had never heard of Old Zip Coon.
And (Omit . . . . .) That is the his - to - ry of Old Zip Coon.

sound of a galloping horse is heard, then Gideon's voice shouting "Mars' Robert, Mars' Robert!"

MRS. OWEN and MARGARET. Robert! (*They run out of the room and return presently, escorting Robert, each holding an arm.*)

*This tune is an old-fashioned reel and is sometimes called "Turkey in the Straw." It has many versions, this being one of the most common.

FIRST GIRL. Welcome!

SECOND GIRL. Glad to see you!

FIRST YOUNG MAN. Just in time!

SECOND YOUNG MAN. How did you get here?

THIRD YOUNG MAN. Off on leave?

(*These must be spoken together to give the effect of a confused greeting. The people all crowd around Robert.*)

ROBERT. It is splendid to be back home here on New Year's Eve. (*He shakes hands.*)

FIRST GIRL. Will the war be over next year?

ROBERT. No one can tell. There are no better soldiers in the world than the armies of the North—and the Confederates are just as determined and just as good fighters as we are.

SECOND GIRL. But they are fighting for a wrong principle. Our's is the righteous cause.

ROBERT. They do not think so—

FIRST GIRL (*to Second Girl*). Sshh! Don't you know that—

MRS. OWEN. You are a stranger here or you would know that my younger son is in the Confederate Army.

(*The girl, very much embarrassed, looks down.*)

MARGARET. That is the trouble—we are both convinced that we are right, and both sides are of the same blood; so neither will give in.

ROBERT. The President's proclamation will prevent England helping the Confederates, at least openly.

MRS. OWEN. Come over by the fire, Robert—Gideon—Maria—we will have supper at once.

ROBERT. That's good, Mother, I've only twenty-four hours' leave, and I want to eat and sleep and talk

© Underwood and Underwood, N. Y.

Abraham Lincoln Reading the Emancipation Proclamation to His Cabinet

all the time; that is, after I've had a bath. I've got most of the soil of Northern Virginia clinging to me in one spot or another——

Father Time (*appearing at the door and announcing in a loud voice*). Eat, drink, and be merry!

(*The people laugh and troop out through the door. Time is about to follow them when Robert calls.*)

Robert. Gideon, come here.

Mrs. Owen. That isn't Gideon.

Robert. I thought not. (*He has placed himself between Time and the door.*)

Philip (*throwing back the hood and taking off the beard*). Hello Bob!

Robert. Phil, you rash young beggar! (*They shake hands.*)

Philip. This is hard on you. But I give you my word that I came home only to see Mother and Meg.

ROBERT. You're in uniform too. For one awful minute I thought you might be in disguise.

PHILIP. Would you have given me up?

ROBERT. I don't know. Thank God that I have not had to make that decision. But you must go at once.

PHILIP. Yes. Good-bye, Mother. (*Just then the sound of the returning guests is heard.*)

ROBERT. Hurry! (*He takes some bills out of his pocket and thrusts them into Philip's hand.*) You may need these—

MARGARET. Good-bye!

(*Philip disappears through the window just as the first guests come through the door.*)

FIRST GIRL. Why, where's Father Time?

ROBERT. Gone. Time flies, you know.

MARGARET. Hark! There is the church bell——

(*They all stand silent for a minute, then there is a shout of "Happy New Year!" and a general shaking of hands. Uncle Gideon comes in playing a popular tune while the company sings as the curtain falls.*

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

Place: The Battlefield of Gettysburg.
Time: November 18, 1863. The Dedication of the field as a national cemetery.

A corner of the platform on which are seated a number of people, their side faces turned to the audience. The back of the orator would be to the audience. Below the platform is a crowd of spectators made up of citizens,

men and women, and some ex-soldiers who have been discharged from the army because of wounds. Some use canes; some, crutches. There are soldiers out of sight behind the platform, for orders are heard. Mrs. Owen, Margaret, Gideon, and Maria are there. "Nearer My God to Thee" is being sung as the curtain rises. The crowd below the platform and the especially invited guests on the platform are standing.

Though like a wanderer, the sun gone down,
Darkness be over me, my rest a stone;
Still all my song shall be,
"Nearer, my God to Thee."
Nearer, my God to Thee, nearer to Thee.

There is a rustle as the guests on the platform seat themselves.

First Soldier. The whole place looks different to-day from the way it did on July second. That was a fierce day.

Second Soldier. If the Confederates had only known it, they had us beaten on the second.

First Soldier (*pointing to his leg from which the foot is missing*). I got that when in the peach orchard.

Third Soldier. I stopped quite a quantity of shrapnel in the ravine. (*He coughs.*) It isn't all out of my lungs yet. There was a funny thing about that. Just before I was hit, I stumbled over a young Confederate lieutenant. He was in a bad way. There is a mill there—

Second Soldier. Yes. Old man and his grandson. Union men—

Third Soldier. That's the place. Just as I stopped a minute to pull the boy up on the bank a

little further, so he wouldn't drown, he opened his eyes. "Bob," says he, "Yes?" says I. Then he looks at me sharper, and kinder sinks back. "I thought you were my brother Robert, he's on the Union side"—then he faints, and just as I'm draggin' him up the bank, the old miller—

(*Mrs. Owen has been listening to the conversation of the soldiers. She pulls a double miniature out from under her cloak and touches the soldier on the arm, interrupting him.*)

MRS. OWEN. Did the young Confederate look like this? (*She hands the picture to the soldier.*)

THIRD SOLDIER. This likeness certainly does favor him, ma'am.

MRS. OWEN. Look on the other side. (*The soldier turns the picture over.*) That is my son Robert, and I think there is a resemblance to you.

MARGARET (*who has been listening very eagerly*). Do you think it was my brother Philip that you helped? What happened next?

THIRD SOLDIER. Well, you see, Miss, I had to move on, but I saw the miller and his grandson come out of the mill, and I pointed to the young Confederate lieutenant—and shouted to them to help him. That's all I know, Ma'am.

MARGARET. Mother, let us leave here directly and see if we can find the miller.

MRS. OWEN. Perhaps someone in Gettysburg will be able to give us news.

THIRD SOLDIER. I hope you can find out about your boy if it was him.

SECOND SOLDIER. Good luck, Ma'am!

Mrs. Owen. Thank you.

(*They go out, Margaret looking back and waving her hand.*)

First Soldier. Now don't things happen funny in this world? You might have been that lad's brother.

Second Soldier. I was with Cushing's battery on Cemetery Hill when Pickett's men came straight through our lines. I saw one of our men club his musket to beat a man over the head, and then he yelled and dropped his gun for it was his own brother.

First Soldier. This here war ought never to have happened. Both sides ought to have listened to reason——

Third Soldier. Sssshh! That's the President.

(*Then a voice is heard reading the dedication of the national cemetery, The Gettysburg Address.*)

"FOURSCORE AND SEVEN YEARS AGO OUR FATHERS BROUGHT FORTH ON THIS CONTINENT A NEW NATION, CONCEIVED IN LIBERTY, AND DEDICATED TO THE PROPOSITION THAT ALL MEN ARE CREATED EQUAL. NOW WE ARE ENGAGED IN A GREAT CIVIL WAR, TESTING WHETHER THAT NATION, OR ANY NATION SO CONCEIVED AND SO DEDICATED, CAN LONG ENDURE. WE ARE MET ON A GREAT BATTLEFIELD OF THAT WAR. WE HAVE COME TO DEDICATE A PORTION OF THAT FIELD AS A FINAL RESTING PLACE FOR THOSE WHO HERE GAVE THEIR LIVES THAT THAT NATION MIGHT LIVE. IT IS ALTOGETHER FITTING AND PROPER THAT WE SHOULD DO THIS. BUT, IN A LARGER SENSE, WE CANNOT DEDICATE, WE CANNOT CONSECRATE, WE CANNOT

© Underwood and Underwood, N. Y.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN DELIVERING HIS GETTYSBURG ADDRESS
This address was made on November 18, 1863, when the battlefield of Gettysburg was dedicated as a national cemetery.

HALLOW, THIS GROUND. THE BRAVE MEN, LIVING AND DEAD, WHO STRUGGLED HERE, HAVE CONSECRATED IT FAR ABOVE OUR POOR POWERS TO ADD OR DETRACT. THE WORLD WILL LITTLE NOTE, NOR LONG REMEMBER, WHAT WE SAY HERE, BUT IT CAN NEVER FORGET WHAT THEY DID HERE. IT IS FOR US, THE LIVING, RATHER, TO BE DEDICATED HERE TO THE UNFINISHED WORK WHICH THEY WHO FOUGHT HERE HAVE THUS FAR SO NOBLY ADVANCED. IT IS RATHER FOR US TO BE HERE DEDICATED TO THE GREAT TASK REMAINING BEFORE US—THAT FROM THESE HONORED DEAD WE TAKE INCREASED DEVOTION TO THAT CAUSE FOR WHICH THEY GAVE THE LAST FULL MEASURE OF DEVOTION—THAT WE HERE HIGHLY RESOLVE THAT THESE DEAD SHALL NOT HAVE DIED IN VAIN—THAT THIS NATION,

UNDER GOD, SHALL HAVE A NEW BIRTH OF FREEDOM—AND THAT GOVERNMENT OF THE PEOPLE, BY THE PEOPLE, AND FOR THE PEOPLE, SHALL NOT PERISH FROM THE EARTH."

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

Place: The Bank of the Rapidan in the Wilderness.
Time: An April Evening in 1864.

The Confederate Army and the Union Army are encamped opposite each other on either side of the Rapidan. Both sides have sent out scouting parties; so that prisoners have been captured from time to time and brought into camp. But for the most part, the armies have been on friendly terms with each other, exchanging tobacco for coffee and newspapers. But, however friendly they are, at the bugle call each returns to his own side, the truce over, a soldier prepared to fight his foe. A group of Confederate soldiers is sitting around a fire just back of the river bank. They are cooking their evening meal while they talk.

Billy Adams (*holding a piece of hardtack over the fire*). Those beans you are making into coffee smell mighty good, Jimmy. (*He makes a grimace to indicate that he is joking.*)

Jimmy Sedden. We ain't had a truce in a week, so we have used up the coffee the Yanks traded us for tobacco. Say, I wish we could have another talk with them fellows and get more news and grub.

Tom Latimer. I'm glad the warm weather is coming. I want to get off my heavy winter clothes.

(*He points to his shirt which is in rags, and wiggles his toes as they poke out through the holes in his shoes.*)

BILLY ADAMS. Lieutenant Owen and Thomas Latimer are the handsome dressers of Gordon's Brigade. (*Tom picks up a pine cone and throws it at Billy, who dodges it laughing.*)

JIMMY SEDDEN. Hey! Don't tip over that coffee pot. You chaps ain't any of you got a blanket to compare with mine.

TOM LATIMER. You're right, Jim. We didn't have airy a carpet in our house, only rag strips. That blanket made out of carpet is warm and pretty, too. Mighty pretty, that basket of roses in the middle.

BILLY ADAMS. Makes me think of the roses climbing over the end of my house in the valley—yaller and pink ones.

JIMMY SEDDEN. My mother's always managed to get something to me on my birthday.

TOM LATIMER. How old be yer, Jim?

JIMMY SEDDEN. Nineteen yesterday. How old are you?

TOM LATIMER. I'm an old man, my son; I'll be twenty-one on the fifth of May.

BILLY ADAMS. Humph! I'm the Methusaleh of the crowd then. I'm twenty-three.

TOM LATIMER. This here war is bein' fit by all ages. My brother's sixteen, and Pop was fifty. He was killed at Manassas.

(*There is a silence while Billy Adams turns his piece of hard tack and Jim pats Tom on the shoulder.*)

JIMMY SEDDEN. Sometimes I think this war is just foolishness.

Billy Adams. Foolishness? Don't you hate the Yanks?

Jimmy Sedden. Sometimes I do, and then again I don't. That newspaper we got last week read as though they thought we were as mean as poison oaks, and there have been times when I thought they were as mean as poison oaks. Now I know I, and you, and all of us ain't poison; so I argue that maybe they ain't no more poisonous than we are. Those fellers we went in bathing with last week were folks just like us—

Tom Latimer. There was a Yank in the woods at Gettysburg wounded so he couldn't move, and the fire in the woods was creepin' nearer and nearer to him, and he was just lyin' there lit up by the flames, his face all pale and sufferin' when Joe Hunter and I pulled him out. He was from New York, a young man like me. He hugged me and cried, and I hugged him and I reckon I cried too. He wasn't any meaner than I am. I liked him as well as any man I know.

Billy. If you all love the Yanks so much, what are you fighting for?

Tom Latimer. I'm fightin' to maintain the rights of the sovereign state of Virginia.

Jimmy Sedden. Me too.

Billy Adams. The Yanks are good fighters—I'll say that for them. Here they've kept us beating them for three years, and still they don't seem to know they're licked.

Tom Latimer. They have four men to our one, and all of the supplies and ammunition they need—and their money buys something. My mother says

she takes her money to market in a basket, and comes home with the food in her pocket book.

BILLY ADAMS. You wait till France and England get into this fight on our side. We'll walk straight into Washington.

JIMMY SEDDEN. Napoleon has got Maximilian in Mexico. If the Yanks didn't hold the Mississippi they might get help to us that way—

BILLY ADAMS. Who said we needed help? It is the Yanks that have formed black regiments. That looks as though they were the ones that needed help.

(*Just then Lieutenant Philip Owen and Captain Lawrence Page walk up to the fire. The men salute.*)

CAPTAIN PAGE. That's all right, men, go on with your supper while it's hot. I wish there were more of it.

BILLY ADAMS. That's all right, Captain. Fat men can't fight, but if General Lee don't start at it soon—

CAPTAIN PAGE. You trust the General—

JIM, TOM, AND BILLY. We do, Captain, we do!

CAPTAIN PAGE. Lieutenant Owen is going on a little scouting expedition to-night. Which of you fellows wants to go with him? He says you chaps have scouted all over this ground—

(*A shot is heard in the distance. The men start up and pick up their guns.*)

CAPTAIN PAGE. What does that mean? (*He dashes out, followed by Tom.*)

BILLY ADAMS. Lieutenant, I have a feeling that Marsa Robert (*General Lee*) is gettin' ready to do some of his prettiest fightin!

Lieutenant Owen. I think likely. I know you fellows will fight as you always do when the time comes.

(*As he finishes speaking, Captain Page, Tom Latimer, and Joe Hunter, the picket, come in leading an officer in union blue who is limping.*)

Captain Page. You say he tried to get away when you halted him—

Joe Hunter. Yes, sir; so I fired—

The Prisoner. And wounded me in the foot.

Lieutenant Owen. Robert!

Robert. Phil!

Captain Page. Do you two know each other?

Lieutenant Owen. We are brothers, sir.

Captain Page. I'll leave you two together while I report to the colonel and get a surgeon to look at your brother's wound.

Lieutenant Owen. Thank you, Captain.

(*They clasp hands. Robert winces with the pain of his wounded foot. Jimmy spreads his blanket.*)

Jimmy. Sit on this.

(*Philip helps his brother to sit down.*)

Robert. Thanks.

Philip. I've always been afraid of this happening.

Robert. The fortunes of war. I was scouting behind your lines when this bright-eyed picket of yours spied me.

Philip. I'm sorry you were caught, but glad you couldn't get away with your information.

(*While the brothers are talking, the men have drawn away and turned their backs. Philip gives Robert a rough hug.*)

ROBERT. You are looking mighty fine, boy. Mother would be glad to know that——

PHILIP. Mother and Margaret! Have you had any letters? I haven't heard a word since we marched through on the way to Gettysburg.

ROBERT. I've her last letter with me. It is strange that she should have written so much of her anxiety for you in it. She heard that you had been wounded at Gettysburg, and she and Margaret spent days hunting for some trace of you. Perhaps she guessed we might meet in some such way.

(*Philip takes the letter eagerly and leans nearer the fire to read it.*)

PHILIP. I was shot through the leg and stunned so that I nearly drowned in the stream that ran through the hollow. A Union soldier stopped a minute as he was making his way through the wood, and pulled me up on the bank. After a while I found that I wasn't so badly wounded as I had feared, though I lost a lot of blood. I crawled out toward the road, and that night as the wagons came through, they picked me up. It's a funny thing, Bob, that Yank looked like you—

ROBERT. That is queer. Mother said something about hearing the news of you through an invalided soldier.

PHILIP. I bet it was the same one.

ROBERT. Your wound hasn't lamed you. I hope this foot of mine heals as completely.

PHILIP. So do I. I'm mighty glad to see you, too.

ROBERT. Same here, but I'd rather change the meeting place.

Philip. The dining room with Gideon bringing in the coffee and Mammy Maria passing the waffles would just about suit me.

Billy. Say, Lieutenant, I can't help hearing what you say about coffee and waffles. Would you mind speaking lower? I'm so hungry now I'd eat my shoes if I had any.

(*The men all laugh.*)

Robert. Here's something else that came with the letter. (*Robert opens his knapsack and takes out a thick cake of chocolate.*) Here, Phil. (*Philip grins broadly, takes the chocolate, and with much gusto breaks off a piece and begins to munch.*)

Philip. That's good. (*He starts to hand back the remainder of the cake.*)

Robert. Keep it. I have another.

Philip. I'll divide the rest of this among the boys. (*Raising his voice.*) Hey! You fellows, Captain Owen has brought us a treat.

(*The men turn around and Philip gives them each a piece of the chocolate.*)

Billy Adams. Sa-ay, Lieutenant, I wish Joe would capture a brother of yours every night. Joe, you are a public benefactor.

(*Robert smiles, then winces with pain. He stoops over to pull off his boot. That reminds Philip of his brother's position as a wounded prisoner.*)

Philip. A surgeon ought to see that foot of yours.

(*Just then from a distance comes the sound of singing. It grows louder until the words of "Hail Columbia" can be distinguished. The Union troops are singing. The men listen until the end of the verse.*)

TOM LATIMER. Not so bad. Let's sing them a real song. Now then, all together, let's show them how to sing "Dixie."

(*The men gradually join in. When the song is ended, there is a shout, "Good for you," from the Union side of the river. Then very softly and sweetly, Jimmy Sedden begins "Home, Sweet Home," and from both sides of the river, the men sing it together.*)

BILLY ADAMS. We all would like to see the war ended and be able to return home once again.

JIMMY SEDDEN. What a happy day that will be when we can get back to our wives and to our mothers!

TOM LATIMER. Let's sing "Dixie" again, boys, as only southerners can!

[*Curtain*]

THE CHRONICLER: THE ALMIGHTY HAS HIS OWN PURPOSES. "WOE UNTO THE WORLD BECAUSE OF OFFENSES! FOR IT MUST NEEDS BE THAT OFFENSES COME; BUT WOE TO THAT MAN BY WHOM THE OFFENSE COMETH." IF WE SHALL SUPPOSE THAT AMERICAN SLAVERY IS ONE OF THOSE OFFENSES, WHICH IN THE PROVIDENCE OF GOD MUST NEEDS COME, BUT WHICH, HAVING CONTINUED THROUGH HIS APPOINTED TIME, HE NOW WILLS TO REMOVE, AND THAT HE GIVES TO BOTH NORTH AND SOUTH THIS TERRIBLE WAR, AS THE WOE DUE TO THOSE BY WHOM THE OFFENSE CAME, SHALL WE DISCERN THEREIN ANY DEPARTURE FROM THOSE DIVINE ATTRIBUTES WHICH THE BELIEVERS IN A LIVING GOD ALWAYS ASCRIBE TO HIM? FONDLY DO WE HOPE—FERVENTLY DO WE PRAY—THAT THIS MIGHTY SCOURGE OF WAR MAY SPEEDILY PASS AWAY.

WITH MALICE TOWARD NONE; WITH CHARTIY FOR ALL; WITH FIRMNESS IN THE RIGHT, AS GOD GIVES US TO SEE THE RIGHT, LET US STRIVE ON TO FINISH THE WORK WE ARE IN; TO BIND UP THE NATION'S WOUNDS; TO CARE FOR HIM WHO SHALL HAVE BORNE THE BATTLE AND FOR HIS WIDOW AND HIS ORPHANS—TO DO ALL WHICH MAY ACHIEVE AND CHERISH A JUST AND LASTING PEACE AMONG OURSELVES AND WITH ALL NATIONS. —*From the Second Inaugural Address of Abraham Lincoln.*

ACT V

Scene I

Place: Headquarters of General Lee, near the Appomattox Court House.
Time: The evening of April 8, 1863.

For the sake of dramatic unity events have been crowded together a little. Grant's letter reached Lee on April 7; the last council of the generals took place on the evening of April 8; and the flag of truce between General Grant and General Lee was sent in the early morning of April 9.

The Confederate officers, General Pendleton and General Fitzhugh Lee, are seated around a fire in the woods. There are no tents, no tables, chairs or stools. All sit on the ground. Besides the generals there is a number of staff officers, among whom is Philip Owen. The Confederate Army of Northern Virginia has been reduced to less than 24,000 men. They are almost without ammunition and food.

General Lee. General Pendleton, what is the condition of the ammunition supply?

GENERAL PENDLETON. Almost exhausted. If we could catch Grant at some weak spot in his line, or when he was asleep!

GENERAL LEE. General Grant never sleeps.

GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE. The cavalry can still do some service.

GENERAL LEE. I'm sure of it. There never was a more devoted set of men.

(*General Longstreet and General Gordon enter together. They salute General Lee.*)

GENERAL LEE. Sit down, gentlemen.

GENERAL GORDON. Any new developments along Grant's line?

GENERAL LEE. General Grant has sent me a letter under a flag of truce, and I have called you together to consider it.

GENERAL LEE (*reading*).

Headquarters of the Armies of the United States,

5 P. M. April 7, 1865.

GENERAL R. E. LEE,

COMMANDING C. S. A.

THE RESULTS OF LAST WEEK MUST CONVINCE YOU OF THE HOPELESSNESS OF FURTHER RESISTANCE ON THE PART OF THE ARMY OF NORTHERN VIRGINIA IN THIS STRUGGLE. I FEEL THAT IT IS SO, AND REGARD IT AS MY DUTY TO SHIFT FROM MYSELF THE RESPONSIBILITY OF ANY FURTHER EFFUSION OF BLOOD BY ASKING OF YOU THE SURRENDER OF THAT PORTION OF THE CONFEDERATE STATES' ARMY KNOWN AS THE ARMY OF NORTHERN VIRGINIA.

U. S. GRANT, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL.

General Longstreet. General Grant does not offer any terms.

General Lee. Do not let us consider surrender until we have discussed every other means.

General Fitzhugh Lee. We might disband the troops and let them get away as best they can, to reform at some designated point.

General Gordon. That would be a dreadful infliction on the people of the country, for the men would be obliged to forage for themselves, and the people are already dreadfully impoverished—

General Longstreet. Beside that, they probably couldn't all get to the rallying place—

General Lee. That plan does not seem feasible.

General Longstreet. Could we abandon our ammunition and food trains and break through Grant's lines by one concentrated effort? The supply trains are always stuck in the mud.

General Pendleton. You couldn't make much impression on Grant's lines without an adequate supply of ammunition. We have little enough. You'll find you need all the grape and canister we can muster.

General Lee. Some modification of that plan might be possible. "WE HAVE TOO MANY BOLD MEN TO THINK OF LAYING DOWN OUR ARMS."

General Longstreet. Grant has unlimited supplies and ten men to our one.

General Lee. Yes, I know. "I NEVER BELIEVED WITH THE VAST POWER AGAINST US WE COULD WIN OUR INDEPENDENCE UNLESS WE WERE AIDED BY A FOREIGN POWER. BUT SUCH CONSIDERATIONS REALLY MADE NO DIFFERENCE TO ME. WE HAD, I WAS SATIS-

FIED, SACRED PRINCIPLES TO MAINTAIN AND RIGHTS TO DEFEND FOR WHICH WE WERE IN DUTY BOUND TO DO OUR BEST EVEN IF WE PERISHED IN THE ATTEMPT."

GENERAL GORDON. We agree with you, General Lee.

GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE. The southern people have made every sacrifice. They are reduced to beggary. I tremble to think of their conditions if we surrender unconditionally.

GENERAL LONGSTREET. We might force our way through Grant's line and keep up a kind of guerilla warfare until the government at Washington should grow weary and grant our people peace and the safeguards of local self-government.

GENERAL LEE. That plan might be feasible. We will make the attempt. General Lee, your cavalry operating with Longstreet's artillery and Gordon's infantry, make an early attack. We might be able to join Johnston in the mountains. Very well, gentlemen, let the attack be made at dawn. I am going to look over the ground and will send you further orders.

(*The men in the group rise and salute General Lee as he moves away with Generals Pendleton and Fitzhugh Lee. General Gordon moves after General Lee and stops him.*)

GENERAL GORDON. "O GENERAL, HAVE YOU ANY SPECIFIC ORDERS AS TO WHERE I SHALL HALT AND CAMP FOR THE NIGHT?"

GENERAL LEE. "I SHALL BE GLAD FOR YOU TO HALT JUST BEYOND THE TENNESSEE LINE."

(*He is smiling as he speaks, and the other generals laugh, as the Tennessee line is more than two hundred miles away. Generals Gordon and Longstreet stand until the group around General Lee has gone into the woods.*)

General Gordon. His heart must be breaking, and yet he conceals his grief so that he may keep up our spirits.

General Longstreet. A great man and a superb general.

(*There is a disturbance among the trees, and Philip Owen and another lieutenant come into the light of the campfire, leading two young soldiers in Confederate uniform. Neither of them is more than nineteen.*)

General Gordon (*as the officers salute*). Lieutenant Owen, what have you found? New recruits for Stonewall's Brigade?

Philip Owen. General, these two men who are wearing our uniform say they belong to General Fitzhugh Lee's cavalry, but I believe they are Yankees.

General Gordon. What have you got to say for yourselves?

First Prisoner. We've been home on sick leave—

Second Prisoner. We belong with Colonel ————'s regiment. We got our papers all right.

(*They take out their papers and show them to General Gordon, who looks at them very carefully.*)

General Gordon. Those signatures seem all right.

Philip Owen. They are Yankees, I'm sure, General. I saw them counting our files by starlight.

First Prisoner. We were. We were trying to get some idea of our forces. We've been away and we wanted to know if we had any army left.

General Gordon. Put more wood on the fire. (*The fire blazes up, showing the faces of the two boys very plainly.*)

PHILIP OWEN (*exclaiming*). General, those are the two fellows who captured me nearly two months ago behind General Grant's headquarters—

SECOND PRISONER. You're crazy, Lieutenant. Of course we would like to be behind General Grant's headquarters, but only if the Confederate army is behind us, close behind us.

FIRST PRISONER. You can see, General, our papers are all right.

PHILIP OWEN. Let me go through them. I know they are the men who captured me.

SECOND PRISONER. How did you get away from the Yanks, Lieutenant?

PHILIP OWEN. I'll never tell you. Only my trick wouldn't work with our men. (*Turning to the general.*) May I search them?

GENERAL GORDON. All right. We mustn't leave anything to chance.

PHILIP OWEN (*to first prisoner*). Off with your coat, Yank.

FIRST PRISONER (*taking off his coat*). Yank, yourself. (*The prisoners are searched. Finally their shoes are taken off, and from under the sole of one a paper is taken.*)

SECOND PRISONER. Well—you've found it.

GENERAL GORDON (*taking the paper and reading*). "GENERAL ORD TO MOVE RAPIDLY . . . AND CUT OFF GENERAL LEE'S RETREAT FROM APPOMATTOX—" (*Looking at the two young soldiers grimly.*) You know your fate. Under the laws of war, you have forfeited your lives by wearing the Confederate uniform—

First Prisoner. General, we understand that. We knew when we went into this kind of service that we were taking our lives into our hands. You have the right to shoot us, but the war can't last much longer, and it would do you no good to have us killed.

General Gordon. That is for General Lee to decide. (*He gives the captured order to one of his staff.*) Take this order to General Lee at once. Keep these men under guard. (*The two men are taken out.*) Owen, I am going to write a false order and you are to let yourself be captured. Be sure you wear your Confederate jacket under your blue army overcoat so that you will not be liable to the death penalty. (*Owen looks very downcast. He takes the order.*)

Philip Owen. General——

General Gordon (*interrupting him*). I know what you are going to say. Those boys will not be executed. We make our final attempt to break through the Union lines at dawn. Those two boys will be safer in our rear than with their own commanders. (*Owen salutes and goes out.*)

[*Curtain*]

Scene II

Place: An open field near Appomattox.
Time: Early morning of April 9, 1863.

General Gordon with his staff, some wounded men with bandages tied around their heads or arms, and General Fitzhugh Lee.

Colonel Venable. General Lee desires to know, General Gordon, if you can cut through the enemy.

GENERAL GORDON. "TELL GENERAL LEE I HAVE FOUGHT MY MEN TO A FRAZZLE, AND I FEAR THAT I CAN DO NOTHING UNLESS HEAVILY SUPPORTED BY GENERAL LONGSTREET'S CORPS."

COLONEL VENABLE. "IF YOU CANNOT GET THROUGH, GENERAL LEE SAYS THAT THERE IS NOTHING LEFT FOR HIM TO DO BUT GO AND SEE GENERAL GRANT."

(*Colonel Venable goes out.*)

GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE. Lee would rather die a thousand deaths than surrender to Grant.

GENERAL GORDON. The troops will fight to the last man, but it is useless. We might as well face the truth. (*An aide comes in, salutes, and hands Gordon a note.*) General Lee notifies us that there is a flag of truce between General Grant and himself, stopping all hostilities. I am to communicate that fact to the commander of the Union forces in front of me. Colonel, take a flag of truce to General Ord, and say to him that General Gordon has received notice from General Lee, of a flag of truce, stopping the battle.

COLONEL PEYTON. General Gordon——er—— there is no flag of truce.

GENERAL GORDON. "WELL, TAKE YOUR HANDKERCHIEF AND TIE IT ON A STICK AND GO."

(*Colonel Peyton feels through his pockets, but no handkerchief is found.*)

COLONEL PEYTON. "I HAVE NO HANDKERCHIEF."

GENERAL GORDON. "THEN TEAR YOUR SHIRT, SIR, AND TIE THAT TO A STICK."

COLONEL PEYTON (*looking at his own shirt, which is of grey flannel, and then at General Gordon's, which is also of flannel*). "I HAVE ON A FLANNEL SHIRT, AND I

SEE YOU HAVE. I DON'T BELIEVE THERE IS A WHITE SHIRT IN THE ARMY, SIR."

GENERAL GORDON. "GET A WHITE RAG AND GO AT ONCE."

(*While the two have been trying to improvise a flag of truce, one of the wounded men takes off his bandage.*)

WOUNDED MAN. Will this do, General?

COLONEL PEYTON (*taking the bandage*). Just the thing.

GENERAL GORDON. Thank you, Captain.

WOUNDED MAN. Not "Captain." I'm just a common soldier.

GENERAL GORDON. You ought to be a captain. There are no *common* soldiers in this army.

[*Curtain*]

SCENE III

Place: Grant's Headquarters, the McLean House, Appomattox Court House.
Time: April 9, 1863, in the Early Afternoon.

The house is a farm house and the room a very plain one. There is a fireplace at the left, a door and window at the back, a door at the right leading into another part of the house. Through the open door and window the spring green of the fields shows in the bright sunshine. In a corner between the window and the fireplace is a large sofa with its seat sagging from the weight of the generals who have sat and lain on it. There are a number of plain wooden chairs set about. At the right is a kitchen table beside which stands a wooden arm chair. In this arm chair sits General Grant.

ORDERLY (*entering*). General Meade is here, sir.

GENERAL GRANT. Ask him to come in.

ORDERLY (*saluting*). Yes, sir.

(*General Meade enters with a staff officer.*)

GRANT. I congratulate you, General.

MEADE. Thank you, General. Lee will be here directly.

GRANT. This will be a heart-breaking matter for him. I've learned much from General Lee. He is a soldier and a gentleman.

MEADE. Is there any proclamation to be made against the rebels?

GRANT. No, the President is against it. He says that he will have no shooting or hanging of these men, even the worst of them. That's a great man, Meade. We've done the fighting in the field, but he has given us a great cause to fight for, and kept the country behind us.

MEADE. The people call him "Father Abraham." That tells the story.

GRANT. Both noble and wise. And yet, Meade, do you know that there were fools who wanted me to run against Lincoln for the presidency. Fortunately, I was not so stupid as that.

(*Captain Robert Owen, aide to Grant, enters.*)

OWEN. General Lee is here, sir.

GRANT. Meade, will you ask General Lee to do me the honor of meeting me here?

(*Meade salutes and goes out.*)

GRANT. Where's my hat, Owen, and my sword? I had no idea that General Lee would arrive so quickly or I would have brushed up a little.

Owen. Here, sir. (*He hands him his hat, then looks anxiously around.*)

Grant. Never mind the sword. I never wear it when I am riding around the field. I have my shoulder straps on this old blouse, so they will know who I am. I don't suppose Lee will recognize me for I was an under officer and he was chief-of-staff to General Scott in the old days of the Mexican War. I remember him perfectly. (*Grant is brushing himself a little as he talks.*)

Owen. This is a great moment, sir. We've waited for this for four years, and yet—

Grant. "YES, I WAS JUBILANT WHEN I RECEIVED LEE'S LETTER ASKING FOR AN ARMISTICE, BUT NOW I FEEL SAD AND DEPRESSED. I CAN'T REJOICE AT THE DOWNFALL OF A FOE WHO HAS FOUGHT SO LONG AND VALIANTLY, EVEN THOUGH THEY FOUGHT AND SUFFERED FOR A CAUSE WHICH SEEMS TO ME ENTIRELY WRONG." They are our kinsmen, Owen, and they are defeated.

Owen. You know, General Grant, I have a brother with General Gordon, if he still lives.

Grant. Let us hope so. We'll get him paroled at once, and you two can go home to your mother united again as I hope the whole country will be, and as Lincoln means to have it united if Congress will put his plan in operation.

(*Meade and some of the staff officers come in. Meade and another officer stand on either side of the door at attention. Followed by General Gordon, another staff officer, and Philip Owen, an aide, Lee, dressed in full uniform and wearing the sword given him by the state of Virginia, enters. Grant salutes. Lee returns the salute.*)

Courtesy D. W. Griffith

SURRENDER OF THE GALLANT GENERAL LEE
TO GENERAL GRANT

GRANT. General Lee, I am very proud of my opponent.

LEE. I've spared neither my men nor myself, but we have come to the end of our resources.

GRANT. Then you have come——

LEE. To ask what terms you will make with me for the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia.

GRANT. Won't you sit, sir? (*Owen places a chair for General Lee by the fireplace, and Grant seats himself by the table.*) General Parker! (*General Parker, Grant's secretary, sits at the other side of the table. Robert Owen goes over to the door and stands beside his brother, who gives him one look and then looks away. Robert lays his hand on his brother's arm.*)

Grant (*beginning to dictate*). Take down these terms, Parker:

Appomattox Court House, Virginia,
April 9th, 1865.

GENERAL R. E. LEE, COMMANDING C. A. S.

GENERAL: IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE SUBSTANCE OF MY LETTER TO YOU, OF THE 8TH OF APRIL, I PROPOSE TO RECEIVE THE SURRENDER OF THE ARMY OF NORTHERN VIRGINIA ON THE FOLLOWING TERMS, TO WIT: ROLLS OF ALL OFFICERS AND MEN TO BE MADE IN DUPLICATE, ONE COPY TO BE GIVEN TO AN OFFICER DESIGNATED BY ME, THE OTHER TO BE RETAINED BY SUCH OFFICER OR OFFICERS AS YOU MAY DESIGNATE. THE OFFICERS TO GIVE THEIR INDIVIDUAL PAROLES NOT TO TAKE UP ARMS AGAINST THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES UNTIL PROPERLY EXCHANGED, AND EACH COMPANY OR REGIMENTAL COMMANDER TO SIGN A LIKE PAROLE FOR THE MEN IN HIS COMMANDS.

THE ARMS, ARTILLERY, AND PUBLIC PROPERTY TO BE PACKED AND STACKED, AND TURNED OVER TO THE OFFICER APPOINTED BY ME TO RECEIVE THEM. THIS WILL NOT EMBRACE THE SIDE ARMS OF THE OFFICERS, NOR THEIR PRIVATE HORSES OR BAGGAGE. THIS DONE, EACH OFFICER AND MAN WILL BE ALLOWED TO RETURN TO HIS HOME, NOT TO BE DISTURBED BY THE UNITED STATES AUTHORITY, SO LONG AS HE OBSERVES HIS PAROLE AND THE LAWS IN FORCE WHERE HE MAY RESIDE.

VERY RESPECTFULLY,

U. S. GRANT, LIEUTENANT-GENERAL.

(*General Grant signs the letter and hands it to General Lee, who re-reads it while the room is very quiet.*)

GENERAL LEE. This provision that the officers may retain their side arms, private property, and horses, is most generous of you, General Grant. It will lighten the spirit of the army.

GENERAL GRANT. Neither the President nor the army has any desire to be vengeful.

GENERAL LEE. These terms certify to that. Our army is organized on different lines from yours. The cavalrymen and artillerists own their own horses. Will they be permitted to retain them?

GENERAL GRANT. Not as these terms are written. But it looks as though we had fought the last battle of the war, and your men in the ranks are nearly all small farmers, are they not?

GENERAL LEE. Yes.

GENERAL GRANT. Then as all the southern states have been raided by both armies, they will not be able to put in a crop to carry themselves and their families through the next winter without the horses and mules they are now riding. Let them keep them. They will need them for the spring ploughing.

GENERAL LEE. This will be good news.

GENERAL GRANT. Can you give me some estimate of the size of your army?

GENERAL LEE. About 25,000 men.

GENERAL GRANT. I'll give orders that rations be issued for that number.

GENERAL LEE. Thank you, General Grant. I accept your very generous terms. (*He begins to unbuckle his sword.*)

GENERAL GRANT. No, no, General Lee. That sword is in its rightful place.

(*He holds out his hand, and the two generals shake hands. Then General Lee salutes General Grant, who returns the salute, and Lee leaves the room with all of his staff except Philip Owen, who is detained by his brother. General Grant turns and sees the two.*)

Grant. Owen, introduce your brother.

Captain Owen. General, my brother, Lieutenant Philip Owen.

(*Philip Owen salutes, General Grant holds out his hand, and they shake hands.*)

General Grant. Lieutenant Owen, I parole you in the custody of your brother, both of you to report at once to your mother for further orders.

Captain Owen. Thank you, General.

(*The two Owens go out.*)

General Grant. General Gordon, Mr. Washburne tells me that he heard you making a speech to your men that he says does you great credit. He wants to meet you.

(*General Gordon, who has been standing by the window, turns, as does the Honorable Elihu Washburne —afterward Minister to France.*)

Mr. Washburne. I heard you urge your men to enter cheerfully and hopefully upon the tasks imposed by the fortunes of war, obeying the laws and giving the same loyal support to the general government which they had yielded to the Confederacy. "passion will speedily die," you said, " and the brave and magnanimous soldiers of the union will become the promoters of sectional peace and fraternity." I greatly honor you for those

words, General Gordon. I am sure that the Government will afford the South the most generous treatment.

GENERAL GORDON. Why do you say that, Mr. Washburne?

MR. WASHBURNE. Because Abraham Lincoln is at its head.

*Fold Up the Banners**

THE CHRONICLER:

Fold up the banners! Smelt the guns!
Love rules. Her gentler purpose runs.
A mighty mother turns in tears
The pages of her battle years,
Lamenting all her fallen sons!

—*Will Thompson.*

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. Look through your history and make a list of any threats of secession made by any states previous to 1860.
2. What caused the unrest during Buchanan's term as president?
3. State the reasons for secession.
4. Which was the first state to secede? What other states followed?
5. Tell Abraham Lincoln's attitude toward the threatened secession.
6. What had Daniel Webster said about the Union?
7. What did Lincoln mean when he said that he had the most solemn oath to "preserve, protect, and defend" the Union?
8. Mention some of the tragedies of the Civil War.
9. What did the Civil War prove?
10. What lessons did the North learn as a result of the war?

*Used by the courteous permisson of Charles Scribner's Sons.

PROJECTS AND EXERCISES

1. Draw a map of the United States as it was in 1861, and shade in the seceded states.

2. Mark in the locations of the great battles fought during the war.

3. Before the Civil War the South was an agricultural region. What industries have developed since that time? Why?

4. Make a list of the poems you can find that relate to the Civil War. Learn one that you like.

5. You have read novels and stories based on the struggle between the North and the South. Write a book review of one of these books, giving the title, author, scene of the story, hero, heroine, and the plot in brief.

6. Give instances of the heroism of the Confederate army.

7. With what side do you sympathize? Why?

8. Learn the Gettysburg speech.

9. How many northern soldiers were killed during the war? How many southern soldiers?

10. Write a paragraph on what might have been the result if the states that seceded had been able to maintain themselves as the Confederate States of North America.

World Concord

CHARACTERS

Ann	Cave Boy	Woman
Margaret	Cave Man	Herald
Caroline	Ab	France
Robert	Girl	England
Will	Boy	Finland
Elizabeth	Boiset	Sweden
Teacher	Kluit	Albania
Cave Woman	Wagenaer	Poland
Cave Girl	Groen	Jugo-Slavia

The characters are listed in the order in which they first speak.

PROLOGUE

Place: Any Class Room.
Time: The Present.

Elizabeth is sitting by herself, reading. Her fingers are stuffed in her ears, and her elbows are propped on either side of the large volume that she is reading. The other five are standing and sitting an aisle away, arguing noisily.

ANN. I think you're very mean to put the Glee Club concert on the same night that the Mirthful Maskers give their play.

MARGARET. Change your date then. Have your play the next night—

CAROLINE. That's a wonderful plan! Everyone will have spent his money on the Glee Club affair.

ROBERT. Not I.

WILL. None of the fellows will bother over your girl shows.

ROBERT. We're having a track meet that night—

MARGARET. O! You can't have the meet that night. The gymnasium is the best place for the concert. The singing sounds much better in that big vaulted room than in the auditorium.

WILL. That's our gymnasium—

CAROLINE. It is not. It belongs to the school.

(*The voices are getting louder and louder. Elizabeth has shaken her head several times and stuffed her fingers tighter in her ears.*)

ANN. I think you are too selfish, Bob. Just because you think you can run—

WILL. He can, too.

MARGARET (*furiously*). That's all he can do.

CAROLINE. Brains in his feet!

ROBERT. Don't you talk—I guess I wasn't the one who said that an important general in the Civil War was General Staff!

WILL. Ha! ha! ha! (*He slaps his leg.*) Honest, did you say that?

CAROLINE. Yes, I did, but I know better than to say that Naomi was the sister of Babe Ruth.

ROBERT. Little Know-it-all!

ELIZABETH. Won't you stop quarreling? I should think you were old enough to discuss plans for school affairs without fighting. (*She speaks very impatiently.*)

CAROLINE. You don't sound any too sweet yourself.

ELIZABETH (*laughing*). I don't, do I? It's funny, too, because I've just been thinking as I looked at the pictures in this "Story of Man," that quarreling

wasted and destroyed, and that if the League of Nations and the International Court only work, co-operation will be so much better than war—

ROBERT. There always have been wars.

WILL. And there always will be.

(*The teacher comes in as Will speaks.*)

TEACHER. Are you sure? What do you think about that statement? You're reading "The Story of Man." (*She turns to Elizabeth.*)

ELIZABETH (*slowly*). There's been war right from the beginning, but, at the same time, it seems as though people have been trying to get on with one another more and more. There were the cave men—

WILL. Cave men! That sounds good to me.

(*Elizabeth turns over the pages and holds out the book to Will.*)

ELIZABETH. Look at the pictures. The man who wrote this book makes them tell the story almost as clearly as the words do.

[*Curtain*]

ACT I

Place: The interior of a cave.
Time: Thousands of years ago. The First Treaty by the Cave Man.

The cave is large so that the back of it is in darkness. The fire is near the front. Beside the fire the cave woman sits, scraping the skin of a wolf to get the fat off. The cave girl is helping her, but she is not doing very much because she is more interested in a clay bowl she has made, which is baking in the hot coals at the

side of the fire. Near the opening to the cave, the boy stands with a sharp flint, scratching a picture of an elephant on a stone.

CAVE WOMAN. There is a great noise——

(*The boy runs to the stone to roll it in front of the opening.*)

CAVE GIRL (*peering out*). Father and Mu are quarreling over a sheep.

CAVE WOMAN. I hope your father doesn't get his head broken—Mu is a hard hitter.

CAVE BOY. Ab has come up and is helping Father —Mu is running away.

CAVE WOMAN. Ab is friendly to us, but he is no hunter like your father.

CAVE GIRL. He has grain planted near his cave.

CAVE WOMAN. I wish we could plant some.

(*The Cave Man and Ab come in, dragging a sheep.*)

CAVE WOMAN. That's a fine, fat beast.

AB. Your man is a great hunter.

CAVE MAN. I can feed my family. That lazy Mu can't take my game away from me.

AB. Would you give me a side of this sheep if I gave you some of my grain for the winter? I have more than I need.

CAVE MAN. That is a good plan. I'll do the hunting, and you raise the grain.

CAVE WOMAN. Why don't you agree to help each other against Mu, who is sometimes able to beat you and take away your game?

CAVE GIRL. He broke my best bowl the last time he tried to get some of our skins away from us. (*She takes up her bowl and smooths its surface.*)

CAVE MAN (*to Ab who has been looking at the wall picture*). Two are stronger than one. Shall we help each other?

AB (*turning around*). I agree. (*He touches the Cave Man's arm, and then his own club.*) Your strength, my strength; your club, my club.

[*Curtain*]

ACT II

Place: Any Classroom.
Time: The present.

The members of the group are looking at the pictures as Elizabeth turns the leaves of "The Story of Man."

ROBERT. Who is the Greek with "Marathon to Athens" written under him?

WILL. Did they run Marathons in those days?

ELIZABETH (*laughing*). This gentleman started the fashion of long distance running. I can't pronounce his name. (*She looks inquiringly at the teacher who is standing in the background.*)

TEACHER. Pheidippides. He carried the news of the victory of Marathon to Athens. With his dying breath he whispered, "Rejoice, We Conquer."

ELIZABETH. Just before that he had run from Athens to Sparta to ask for help against the Persians. He did the distance—over a hundred miles—in less than two days.

MARGARET. I've heard of the Battle of Marathon. It is one of the decisive battles of the world. Why was it decisive?

ELIZABETH. Because the world would have been a different place if the Persians had conquered Greece. The Greeks loved liberty and the Persians didn't believe in it. This history says (*she reads*) "This fight forms the prelude to the story of human freedom and progress."

TEACHER. For their time the Greeks were civilized. They loved beauty as well as strength. And they had learned that there was much to be gained by doing things *with* other city states as well as against them. They had formed several leagues. That's where the idea came from. The Olympian Games was another Greek institution that helped join them.

WILL. Did they have the same contests as we have —racing and wrestling?

ELIZABETH. Yes, and chariot racing. (*She turns to a picture.*) Look at these runners. The games, and afterward the contests in poetry and speech-making, were all in honor of the gods. For a thousand years all of the Greek city states had a common interest in these festivals. The winner in any of the contests was the greatest of heroes to his city.

TEACHER. Even when the Greeks fought among themselves there were certain places that were sacred, to which all could go, even enemies.

ROBERT (*who has picked up the history again*). Listen to this—they had a league of neighbors.

WILL. A league?

ROBERT. Yes, I can't pronounce the Greek name (*he spells*), A-m-p-h-i-c-t-y-o-n-i-c-s. It means a league of neighbors. Listen to this: "Twelve of the Greek tribes joined themselves to protect the oracle

at Delphi, and the following oath was taken by the members of the league: 'We will not destroy any Amphictyonic town nor cut it off from running water in peace or war; if anyone shall do so, we will march against him and destroy his city.'"

TEACHER. You see, even in those early days, twenty-five hundred years ago, people were uniting to make some sort of international law.

WILL. But there was war just the same.

TEACHER. Yes, war—but not just the same; for the Greeks, through their union to protect their shrines and exalt the beauty of their civilization, have handed down to us a great treasure of art and literature.

MARGARET. It is queer the way religion and politics have always been mixed up.

ANN. The Crusades were the result of a sort of league, weren't they?

WILL. Well, if the Crusaders weren't fighters—

ROBERT. Richard the Lion Hearted and Godfrey of Bouillon—

MARGARET. Why Bob, how did you remember those names?

ROBERT. I guess I've read "Ivanhoe" too. But I don't see that the Crusades did anything toward world concord. They were wars.

TEACHER. That is true, but the countries of Europe did join in a common cause to rescue the Holy Sepulchre from the infidels.

WILL. But they didn't succeed, and thousands were killed.

TEACHER. Yes, but only a league could have taken that number of persons to the East where they

learned how to do various sorts of manufacturing; they learned much science; they brought back with them a knowledge of the mariner's compass, which made Columbus' voyage possible.

ROBERT. Three cheers for Columbus!

ANN. Stop interrupting!

TEACHER. And the windmill that was the means of pumping the water out of the lands that afterward became the great little country of the Netherlands.

ELIZABETH. Why, that's perfectly wonderful! Everything connects with everything else. Holland had a league.

TEACHER. Yes, there's a picture of the man who led that league. Turn to it.

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

SCENE I

Place: Open Square in front of the Town Hall, The Hague.

Time: July 26, 1581.

There is a great crowd assembled, for the deputies of the United Provinces of the Netherlands, Brabant, Flanders, Zeland, Guelders, Holland, Utrecht, Friesland, had assembled as the Estates General of the United Netherlands, to exchange oaths of allegiance and fidelity with William of Orange, the Silent, and to declare their independence of Philip II, King of Spain. The people are waiting to hear the proclamation of the Act of Abjuration. The reason for this revolt of the Netherlands is the misrule and persecution by the

Spanish during the reign of Charles V as well as that of his son.

GIRL. Mother, I'm so hot!

BOY. So am I.

BOISET. If you think this is hot, my dear, consider the fires of the Inquisition that have burned so many of our pious Hollanders.

KLUIT. If the Union can only be maintained, there will be no more tortures and executions. We may live in peace again.

WAGENAER. Without having the land that we won from the sea so taxed that there is nothing left to live on.

GROEN. Sixty years we've fought the greatest country in Europe so that we might worship God after our own minds.

CROWD. Long live Prince William, Count of Holland!

BOISET. The king knows who is our surest guide after the Almighty. That is why he has promised a great reward to the one who will assassinate him.

BOY (*to Boiset*). Have you ever seen the prince?

BOISET. Yes, many times. He is a great man.

GIRL. As great as the king?

WOMAN. Much greater, for the king thinks that soldiers and persecution can conquer us, though city after city has fought to the last man rather than submit. Force can only kill us, and dead men pay no taxes. Now the prince has few men, but he uses his wits. When the Spaniards besieged Leyden, William of Orange called the sea, from whom the

NEW YORK SCHOOL GIRLS IN A PEACE PAGEANT

Hollanders had taken their land, to the rescue. He cut the dykes.

BOY (*who has been listening intently*). Long live Prince William! (*The people in the crowd laugh and repeat: "Long live our Prince!"*)

GROEN. It is he who has urged this union. In union there is strength.

KLUIT. Yes, union, and then independence of Spain, with William for our king; and all disputes among us to be settled "by good men or by amiable compromise."

WAGENAER. Each for all and all for each!

(*The trumpeters come out on the steps and sound a fanfare. The crowd quiets down. The herald steps out on the balcony. He appears to be reading a paper, but at first his voice is not audible. The crowd grows breathlessly silent, so that the words of the reader sound clearly.*)

HERALD. "Whereas God did not create the people slaves to their princes to obey their commands whether

right or wrong, but rather the prince for the sake of the subjects, to govern them according to equity, to love and support them as a father his children or a shepherd his flock, and even at the hazard of his life to defend and preserve them; therefore, when he does not behave thus, but, on the contrary, oppresses them, seeking opportunities to infringe their ancient customs and privileges, exerting from them slavish compliance, then he is no longer a prince but a tyrant, and the subjects . . . may not only disallow his authority, but legally proceed to the choice of another prince for their defence."

CROWD. Long live the Estates General! Long live the Prince of Orange!

(*Again the trumpets sound and the herald speaks.*)

HERALD. The Estates General require that all shall take the following oath:

"I solemnly swear that I will henceforward not respect nor obey nor recognize the King of Spain as my prince and master; but that I renounce the King of Spain and abjure the allegiance by which I may have formerly been bound to him. At the same time I swear fidelity to the United Netherlands . . . and also to the national council established by the Estates of these provinces."

CROWD. We swear!

HERALD. All must come at the appointed time and separately take the oath.

(*Moved by a common impulse, the crowd sings the old Netherland hymn, "We gather together to ask the Lord's blessing."*)

[*Curtain*]

ACT III

SCENE II

Place: Any Classroom.
Time: The Present.

MARGARET. Those old Dutchmen made their declaration of independence almost two hundred years before we did.

ROBERT. They had courage.

ELIZABETH. They were a kind of example for us, weren't they?

TEACHER. Nations as well as individuals have great responsibility. Nations and individuals influence each other for good or evil. "No man liveth to himself, and no man dieth to himself."

WILL. The colonies were even more separated in their customs and interests than the Netherlands, and yet they managed to get on together.

ANN. They had to join or be beaten. Don't you remember what Franklin said—"If we don't hang together, we will hang separately?"

MARGARET (*who has been thinking silently*). The opening of the Declaration of Independence is very much like the Act of Abjuration. (*She begins.*) "When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary—"

(*The rest join in, ending at the words, "safety and happiness."*)

ANN. Then the states found that they couldn't get on while fighting each other for trade, so they decided that a closer union was necessary.

TEACHER. They found that it was wiser to give up the small advantage that they might have as individuals, for the greater advantage that came from union.

WILL. I'm beginning to see what you meant in the beginning. Concord is wiser than discord.

ROBERT. That's all true, but these unions were all against something or somebody.

MARGARET. Not all; ours was *for* something. Let's repeat the preamble. Then you will see what I mean.

(*They chant the Preamble to the Constitution.*)

ELIZABETH. We are the "posterity" that they worked for, and I'm very grateful.

ROBERT. Me, too.

WILL. Pretty fine country! All together now—Three cheers for the Red, White, and Blue!

[*Curtain*]

ACT IV

SCENE I

Place: Any Classroom.
Time: The Present.

ROBERT. The United States seems to have settled most of her disputes with other nations by arbitration. But—

WILL. The Hague Tribunal couldn't prevent the world war.

CAROLINE. The nations that started the world war didn't want to arbitrate—they refused to arbitrate.

TEACHER. But out of the world war has come the League of Nations and the permanent Court of International Justice.

© Brown Bros.

A PEACE CONFERENCE IN SESSION AT THE HAGUE

WILL. The United States does not belong to either of them—what good are they to us?

TEACHER. It's true that we don't belong to either organization officially, but President Woodrow Wilson insisted on putting the covenant of the League of Nations into the treaty of Versailles that ended the world war; Elihu Root, another American, has helped form the Permanent Court and John Bassett Moore, still another American, is one of the eleven judges that make up the Court.

MARGARET. Do you think that if Washington were living today he would decide that we ought to join the League?

TEACHER. I don't know. Washington had an extraordinary understanding of what action was wise in his day.

ROBERT. Times have changed.

TEACHER. How?

ROBERT. Well—

WILL. Everybody is closer to everybody else—radio, telephone, telegraph.

MARGARET. Automobiles, aeroplanes.

CAROLINE. Everybody is your neighbor.

TEACHER. Exactly! Therefore, nations are slowly learning what individuals have known for some time—that their welfare depends on their neighbors' well-being. If I have smallpox, my neighbor may catch it, so he welcomes vaccination which will prevent both of us from having that disease that used to kill thousands. If he has stagnant water in his vacant lot, the mosquitoes that breed there will come over and bite me. If my neighbor is hungry, he may want to steal my bread; so, if for no other reason, it is to my interest to see that my neighbor is as well and comfortable and happy as I am.

MARGARET. But what have smallpox and mosquitoes got to do with the League?

(*The others laugh.*)

TEACHER (*laughing, too*). A good deal, my dear. For you see science had made marvelous discoveries and these discoveries have led to the many inventions that made possible the production of all sorts of things—automobiles, bread, carpets, dust pans, envelopes—I could go through the alphabet over and over and not come to the end of the manufactured articles that are now being produced in enormous quantities.

WILL. But what has manufacturing got to do with the League?

© Underwood & Underwood, N. Y.

THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS IN SESSION AT GENEVA

ELIZABETH. Oh, I see! The countries get into quarrels over selling to each other.

TEACHER. They do worse than that, they often struggle over the land that furnishes the raw materials, like cotton, rubber, iron, wood, that are used in the construction of so much that we need, and the coal and oil that run the engines that turn the wheels that move the—

ROBERT. It sounds like "The House that Jack built."

TEACHER. Exactly the same on a gigantic scale. And, as a result these wars have brought ruin to various parts of the world during the last seventy-five years, ending with the world war, the most terrible of them all. For science and invention have made war much more terrible than in the days when men fought with bows and arrows, and spears.

ANN (*slowly*). Then the League of Nations is a union *for* something. The other unions were *against* some other nation or group.

TEACHER. That is the idea of the League. Fifty-five nations, great and small, have agreed to submit their disagreements to arbitration.

ROBERT. My father says the League sounds well but that they haven't done anything.

ELIZABETH. The man who wrote this history says they have. There's a picture here.

(*She turns the pages while the others look over her shoulder.*)

[*Curtain*]

SCENE II

Place: Geneva. A large room.
Time: The present.

Around a large table a number of the representatives of the fifty-five nations forming the League are still seated. A group consisting of the representatives of France, England, Sweden, Finland, Poland, Lithuania, Albania and Jugo-Slavia are standing together talking, for the formal meeting has been adjourned.

FRANCE. We have accomplished a good deal in this session. The plans for suppressing the traffic in opium and drugs are completed.

ENGLAND. That is a big step forward.

FINLAND. I feel that the settlement of our dispute with my friend, Sweden, (*he lays his hand on Sweden's shoulder*) over the Alland Islands was most successful.

SWEDEN. A wiser way than war.

ALBANIA. My brother, Jugo-Slavia, and I are also at peace and contented, though at first our quarrel was bitter.

POLAND. Lithuania and I are not agreed, but—

JUGO-SLAVIA. We will find a way that is not the old way of war.

[*Curtain*]

SCENE III

Place: Any Classroom.
Time: Present.

TEACHER. You see, three wars averted.

MARGARET. The man who wrote this "Story of Man" says a beautiful thing at the end. He tells us what we should aim to make the world for those who come after us.

TEACHER. Read it to us.

MARGARET (*reads slowly from the book*). Today, more than ever before perhaps, two great forces must guide our civilization if it would endure, *education* and *religion*. These two must enter actively into the lives of each one of us. Education, that we may use wisely the knowledge that science is disclosing more abundantly each day, and religion, that will banish selfishness because it has grown from our belief in the fatherhood of God and the brotherhood of man. Then will *concord* rather than *discord* become the rule of life. "They shall beat their swords into ploughshares, and their spears into pruning hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more."

(*The group stand silent for a moment after Margaret has finished reading. A bell sounds.*)

ROBERT. We might have that track meet in the afternoon.

WILL. That suits me.

CAROLINE. I don't see why we couldn't combine the glee club with the theatricals.

MARGARET. Of course. Then we could divide the box office receipts.

WILL. Do you need any strong men to move scenery?

ROBERT. Call on us.

[*Curtain*]

QUESTIONS FOR STUDY

1. The opening lines of the Declaration of Independence and the preamble of the Constitution are mentioned. Learn the passages. See if you can write them correctly from memory.
2. What were the Olympian games?
3. Which league was formed by the Greeks? Why?
4. Who were the Crusaders? What league did they form?
5. Do you think "co-operation" might be a one-word theme for this play? Have you a better word to suggest?
6. What leagues are there between the great nations today?
7. Show how any incident has been settled through the league.

PROJECTS AND ASSIGNMENTS

1. Read Browning's poem *Pheidippides*.
2. Look up any arguments for or against the entry of the United States into the League of Nations.
3. Give instances of any dispute between England and the United States being settled by arbitration rather than by force.
4. Make a map of Europe and fill in the various countries and nationalities.
5. With the aid of this map show how it is a difficult matter to keep peace.

How to Produce an Historical Play

(*Nathan Hale Used as Model*)

A Class, Grade or School Project

THE first step in the production of an historical play should be the selection by the pupils of the play to be produced. When this has been agreed upon, it should be decided whether the play is to be produced as a school, a grade, or a class project. Where it is decided that the production be a school project, steps should be taken to secure the aid of the principal, the assistant-principal, or of a teacher who has had experience in play producing. The one selected should be the General Director of the entire production.

The General Director

The General Director should proceed to the appointment of the several officers required for the production of the play. These should include:

1. **A Stage Director.** The teacher of English or of Elocution, with pupil assistants, would probably be the best qualified for this kind of work.

2. **A Music Director.** The leader of the orchestra or the teacher of music should be in charge of the music.

3. **An Art Director.** This work should be given to the art or drawing teacher, who should be assisted

by the most skillful children in the painting and drawing classes.

4. **A Costume Director.** The sewing teacher assisted by the best pupils of the dressmaking class should direct the costumery work.

5. **A Property Director.** The work of preparing properties should be directed by the teacher of shop work assisted by his most skillful pupils.

6. **A Business Manager.** The business side of the production should be controlled by the teacher in charge of the school bank or the school fund.

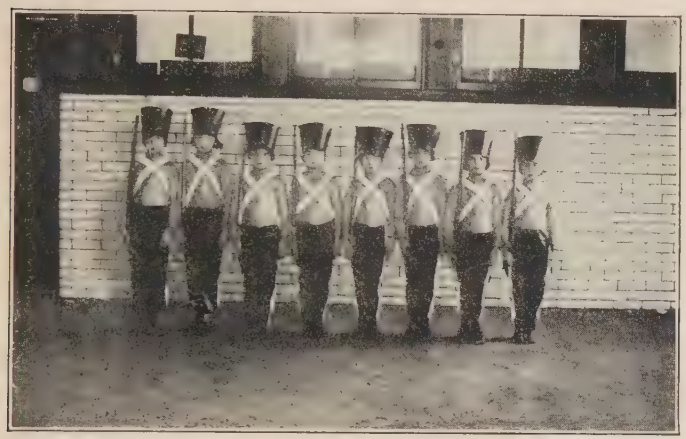
SELECTION OF THE CAST

The selection of the cast should be in the hands of the General Director and the Stage Director. The pupils who read and recite well should be tried out and parts assigned to them which they are best fitted for. There should be understudies for Nathan Hale, for George Washington, and for George. There should also be one general understudy for the female parts and one general understudy for the minor male parts.

The General Director should call a meeting of all the directors of special departments and at this meeting have a reading of the play by the selected cast. The pupil assistants should also attend. The directors of the various departments should take notes on the necessary requirements of their departments.

THE STAGE DIRECTOR

The Stage Director's notes on *Nathan Hale* should be as full as possible. He should make notes on:



School Children Acting as British Soldiers Guarding Nathan Hale

1. A sketch of the setting for each Act.
2. A list of the pupils appearing in each Act together with their official classes.
3. Each pupil should be given a copy of *Nathan Hale* as it appears in *Dramatic Moments in American History*.
4. Any other observations.

The Music Director

The Music Director should make notes as to the kind of music that should be played:

1. Before the play opens.
2. Between Act I and Act II.
3. Between Act II and Act III.
4. Between Act III and Act IV.
5. Between Act IV and Act V.
6. At the end of the play.

Should the music be of the kind that was played in the time of Nathan Hale or should modern music be played by the orchestra? Possibly the spirit of the play should be preserved throughout the intermissions, though some may wish to play modern music. The music played in America in 1776 was largely English. The following patriotic selections are appropriate:

Prelude: *Hearts of Oak* and *Cherry Ripe* in "Sounds from England," published by Carl Fischer, New York City.

Between Act I and Act II: *Hail to the Chief.*

Between Act II and Act III: *We're Tenting Tonight.*

Between Act III and IV: *Hail Columbia!*

Between Act IV and Act V: *Glory, Glory, Hallelujah!*

Postlude: *America.*

THE ART DIRECTOR

The Art Director should co-operate with the Stage Director, with the Costume Director, and with the Business Manager.

The Business Manager will require the most suitable posters for advertising the play on the school bulletins, in shop windows, and in public places.

1. Attractive posters should be prepared containing the last speech of Nathan Hale on a scroll with a red, white, and blue border. There are other suitable lines of Nathan Hale's, printed in large type, which might be used.

2. A drawing of Nathan Hale's schoolhouse.

Framework, Covering, and Leaves for the Nathan Hale Play, Made by Boys and Girls

3. A large reproduction of his monument in City Hall Park, New York City.

4. The Minute Man poster.

5. Other subjects thought out by the pupils themselves.

The Stage Director should be consulted in determining the lighting arrangements that will give the best effect. The Art Director should also aid and advise the Costume Director in dyeing the costumes.

The Costume Director

The duties of the Costume Director will consist of producing costumes that are in harmony with the dress worn in Revolutionary times. This will need consultation with the history teacher who will be able to give much valuable advice. The color scheme should be worked out with the full co-operation of the Art Director.

THE PROPERTY DIRECTOR

The Property Director must list all the properties needed in each act. The properties needed for the production of *Nathan Hale* are:

ACT I:

1. The exterior of the schoolhouse, showing the door.
2. Books for pupils to carry. Pupils did not carry many books in those days. They also carried boxes of lunch, for they came from long distances.

ACT II:

1. Wall map, table, and chairs.
2. Swords for all the officers.
3. Paper, quill pen, and ink.

ACT III:

1. A camp fire.
2. Stacked guns.
3. Book and spectacles for Hale.

ACT IV:

1. Tables, chairs, dishes, and goblets.
2. Metal coins for money.
3. Wagon whip.

ACT V:

1. Table, chair, pen, letters, and ink.
2. Couch and blankets for Hale's couch.

The Business Manager

The duties of the Business Manager will consist of:

1. Taking charge of the sale of seats, with pupil assistants from each class.
2. Advertising the play in school and in the local papers.
3. Keeping an account of all expenses and paying all bills.
4. Printing the tickets and programs. This may be done in the school printing shop, or tickets may be mimeographed.
5. Appoint assistants to act as ushers.

The Dress Rehearsal

When the work outlined for each department has been completed, frequent conferences of the directors will be needed before the dress rehearsal takes place. At the dress rehearsal, each director should be present to see that the work of his department is up to standard. Should the standard of work not be as high as it should be, two dress rehearsals might be necessary. The directors may assist the actors in making up for the performance. The entire performance should be rehearsed from the prelude by the orchestra to the postlude and to the clearing of the assembly hall.

Review of the Performance

After the play has been performed in public, the Committee should meet and a financial report be given. The criticism of the performance by the school

faculty, the local press, or by some of the citizens present at the performance, should be read in assembly, as well as any letters of appreciation sent by those who attended to the actors who participated.

It might later be possible to give similar performances in other schools. When a second play is given it should be possible for the pupils to appoint directors from among their own members and produce it themselves.

How to Write an Historical Play

A Term Project for the Class in History and in Composition

THE plays of this book may be divided into two classes: (1) Those that treat of some phase of our country's growth or tell the story of a movement. Under this class are included *For Faith and Freedom*, *When Old New York Was Young*, *The Making of the Constitution*, *The Lone Star State*, *The Tie That Binds*, *A House Divided*, *Manifest Destiny*, and *World Concord*. (2) Those whose plots are centered around the lives of historical characters. Under this class come *Nathan Hale*, *Benjamin Franklin*, *George Rogers Clark*, *Dolly Madison*, and *Daniel Webster*.

The Subject

The first step in the writing of an historical play is to decide upon the subject. Should the story of a movement or some phase of our country's growth be selected, or should action be centered about the life of some great hero or heroine? Glance over the index of your history textbook. Select the subject you wish to write about. The class may vote upon the subject to be taken from the best list of subjects suggested. Suppose you have decided to write a play about Robert Fulton, the great inventor.

DIVISION OF CLASS INTO GROUPS

The second step will be for the class to divide itself into groups or committees to learn all that they can about Robert Fulton and his invention. The teacher will assign one of the following topics to each of the groups. Each group should investigate carefully and thoroughly the topic assigned to it.

1. A brief account of the life of Robert Fulton.
2. The story of the invention of the steamboat.
3. The habits, customs, and dress of the people who lived in Fulton's time.
4. The people who helped or hindered Fulton in his life work.
5. The exact words spoken by the characters to be used in the play.
6. Drawings, maps, pictures, etc., that throw any light on Robert Fulton, his invention, or the customs of the time.

THE SYNOPSIS

When the various groups have completed their investigations, they should report the results of their research work during composition periods. The class is now ready for the third step—the writing of the synopsis for the play. This should read somewhat as follows:

At the beginning of the Revolutionary War Robert Fulton was a boy of fourteen. One of his friends was John Cope, a lad of about his own age. John's tutor was Mr. Andre, afterward hanged as a British spy. One day, Robert showed Mr. Andre the sketch of a

machine which he had designed to make rowboats go without rowing. In the same book with this sketch was a drawing of a lady's head which Mr. Andre happened to notice. This sketch was done beautifully. Mr. Andre told Robert that he might be an inventor or he might be a painter. The first duty was to find out which.

Several years later Robert was sent to London to study painting under Benjamin West. Although Robert painted excellent pictures, his mind was still upon inventions. Instead of painting pictures he spent his time in machine factories. Finally, Mr. West became discouraged and advised Robert to try out his steam engine ideas. Robert was invited to go to France to explain to the great Napoleon the plan of an under-sea boat he had drawn. The boat built according to this plan was not a success.

Robert returned to America bringing some English machinery with him. He constructed a steam engine which he put into the Clermont. The day set for the trial trip was August 17, 1807, at a pier in the North River which was also called the Hudson River. Crowds gathered at the pier to watch the result of "Fulton's Folly," as people called his experiment with the Clermont. This was a great day in the life of Robert Fulton. Great was his joy when after one little mishap to the engine, he succeeded in getting the boat to steam swiftly up the river amid the cheers of the crowd.

It happened that men who owned large numbers of sailboats did not want Fulton's invention to be a success. It is said that some people tried to destroy Fulton's engine, and we have read the statement of

the engineer on the Clermont that captains of sailboats tried to run into the Clermont and disable it. We have read also that sailboat owners offered Fulton large sums of money to destroy his invention.

Mr. Fulton and Mr. Livingston secured exclusive rights to steam navigation on the Hudson River and Fulton built more steamboats. People liked to travel in steamboats. The United States Government accepted Fulton's invention for a warship which was named "The Fulton." It was while Mr. Fulton was inspecting the warship that he caught the cold which resulted in his death.

Division of the Play into Acts

When the class has carefully read the story of the play, the next step, step four, will be to divide the story into acts or scenes.

Act One

An appropriate place to start would be at the home of John Cope where Robert Fulton first showed his sketches to Mr. Andre, Cope's tutor.

Place: The Library in the Home of John Cope, Lancaster, Pa.

Time: 1776.

Act Two

The next stage in Fulton's career is that which takes him to England to study, so Act Two would revolve around that period.

Place: The Studio of Benjamin West in London.

Time: Several Years Later.

Act Three

In most plays of four or even five acts, the crisis comes in the third act. By crisis is meant the most interesting or exciting point in the action of the play. Here, the crisis of this play is at the time when Fulton succeeds with the Clermont in the presence of the cheering crowds.

Place: Near the Pier in the Hudson River.

Time: August 17, 1807.

Act Four

The outline of the story shows that the next critical point in the life of Fulton was the time when he was offered large sums of money to destroy his invention. Fulton needed money badly. Would he destroy his invention? This is the climax of the play.

Place: The Home of Robert Fulton.

Time: Two Weeks Later.

Act Five

A suitable place to end the play is at the scene of his last great work.

Place: On Board the War Frigate "Fulton."

Time: February 24, 1815.

The Story of Each Act

It is now necessary that the story of each act be written out in detail. This is the fifth step. The story is written in the present tense, as though everything were happening before our eyes.

The Story of Act One. John Cope is sitting at a table in his father's study, looking at a book. Robert Fulton enters. Robert and John are both fourteen years of age. Robert wants John to go up the river to try out a device he has made to make rowboats go without oars. John says he cannot go because Mr. Andre, his teacher, has not come yet to hear his lessons. While the boys are talking Mr. Andre enters the room. They ask his opinion of Fulton's device. Robert shows him a plan he has drawn in a notebook. Mr. Andre says he is not an authority on engines for boats but the plan looks as though it ought to work. John and Robert ask him to go down to the river. Mr. Andre says that he cannot go. He explains that he is a British officer and has been put "on parole" by the American authorities. He has given his promise not to leave the town and the river is beyond the town. Mr. Andre is a man of honor. It is to be regretted that he, later in the war, had to be hanged as a spy. While Robert is explaining his drawing of the rowboat to Mr. Andre and is showing how it will work, Mr. Andre happens to turn a page in the notebook and sees the drawing of a beautiful lady's head. When he hears that Robert did the drawing he is surprised that a boy could do such fine work. He says, "My boy, you may be an inventor or you may be a painter. Your first work will be to find out which."

The Story of Act Two. Mr. West is in his studio. He pauses in his painting to look over the mail his maid has just brought in. It is all for Fulton. He takes out his watch. It is late in the morning and

Fulton has not come for his painting lesson. Mr. Low, a friend of Mr. West, enters. It is a fine day and Mr. Low is in high spirits. Mr. West is troubled about his pupil, Fulton. He tells Mr. Low that at first Fulton did very fine paintings, so fine that some of his pictures had been entered in the London Academy. For the last week, however, Fulton has neglected his painting and has been spending his time in machine shops and boat yards. All the mail on the table is for Fulton. Every letter is about a boat or a steam engine. Fulton has contrived an under-sea boat which he would rather work on than on his pictures. Robert Fulton enters and after greeting the gentlemen he looks at his mail. One of the letters is from the great Napoleon. He has invited Fulton to go to France to explain his plan of an under-sea boat. Fulton is delighted and eager to go to France. Mr. Low and Mr. West beg him to keep on painting, but Fulton is sure that he will be a better inventor than a painter. Finally the other gentlemen are reconciled to his going and wish him success.

The Story of Act Three. The Clermont is anchored near the pier. A guard is pacing the deck and Mr. Acker, the engineer, is oiling the engine. Mr. Fulton does not want the Clermont tied to the dock in case the crowds may go on board and tamper with the engine. The crowd has collected on the dock. Among the people are two men who own sailboats. These two men wish with all their hearts that the Clermont were at the bottom of the Hudson River. These men may be called Mr. Long and Mr. Vandewater. It is

said that they paid a man to break into Fulton's machine shop to destroy the machinery. Among the spectators are Mr. Barker and his little daughter, Sarah. What puzzles little Sarah is that Mr. Fulton can expect his boat to sail without sails. Mr. Barker and Sarah are to go to Albany on the Clermont. Mr. Fulton pushes his way through the crowd and is rowed out to the Clermont. He hears unkind things said of his boat without sails. Soon, the black smoke comes out of the smoke stack of the Clermont and Mr. Fulton starts the engine. The expectant crowd becomes quiet. The boat moves a few yards and then the engine stops. Many of the people who are watching, laugh and jeer. They call the Clermont "Fulton's Folly." Mr. Fulton stands up on the deck of the Clermont and begs the crowd to be patient. He says there is something broken on the engine which he can repair in a few minutes. The crowd becomes more quiet, but some of the bystanders ridicule the idea of the ship without sails. The crisis of the play is in this scene. Soon the engine is started again and the Clermont moves quickly out to the middle of the river and steams north toward Albany. The crowd that came to criticize breaks into cheers.

The Story of Act Four. Mr. Fulton is at home on this evening two weeks after the successful trial trip of the Clermont. He has finished the plans for a new engine and is showing them to Mr. Livingston, his partner. Mr. Fulton and Mr. Livingston are trying to secure exclusive rights for steam navigation on the Hudson River. There are too many passengers for the Clermont and new boats must be built. Mr.

Livingston approves of Mr. Fulton's plans. Fulton is no longer worried about failure of his engines to go, but he is worried lest jealous owners of sailboats destroy his engines. He has had to keep a guard on his boat and in his shop day and night. Mr. Livingston leaves to get ready to go to Washington to see about patents. After he has gone Mr. Long and Mr. Vandewater call upon Fulton. They try to induce him to destroy his invention for twenty-five thousand dollars. They increase the offer to fifty thousand dollars and offer an interest in their sailboat business, if Fulton will agree not to build an engine for a steam boat for twenty years. Fulton needs money badly, but he is a noble man and cannot be bribed. He knows his invention is for the good and prosperity of his fellowmen. He tells the men who have come to bribe him that if he were to destroy his invention and agree not to make any more engines, he would set back navigation in America twenty years. Fulton declares he wants to serve mankind. When his visitors persist in their offer of a bribe, Fulton asks them to leave. This is the climax of the play.

The Story of Act Five. The United States Government is greatly interested in Fulton's steam engine, and secured his assistance when the frigate "Fulton" was built. The "Fulton" is now finished and is tied up at a wharf in Hoboken, February 24, 1815. Some men are painting the deck. Two naval lieutenants are aboard waiting for Mr. Fulton to come to show them how the engine works. Mr. Fulton has not arrived. The lieutenants have been waiting a long time. One of them calls over to a man who is painting

the deck and asks if he knows why Mr. Fulton has not arrived. The painter says he does not know. Mr. Fulton caught a bad cold several days before and contrary to the wishes of the family, worked on the engine of the "Fulton" late that day. Mr. Fulton felt quite ill when he left the ship to go home. That was three days ago. He has not visited the ship since. While the lieutenants are talking with the painter, a rowboat containing several men approaches. The men come on board the "Fulton." One of the men tells the lieutenants that Mr. Fulton is dead. He says the shops in New York are to be closed on the day of the funeral, and that the flags of the city are to be lowered to half mast. All the members of the state legislature will wear mourning buttons. The lieutenants declare the death of Fulton not only a state loss but a national loss. They order the flag to be lowered to half mast and fire off the ship's cannon as all stand silently about.

WRITING THE LINES

The sixth step consists in writing in the lines of each act. Each member of the class is expected to contribute. One member may be selected by the teacher to act as secretary to write down what is said. The teacher will ask the questions. The best answers will be preserved. Below, the writing in of lines for Act One is given as an example.

After all the lines for the play have been written the whole play should be read in class as a reading lesson. In this way the lines may be improved upon, polished, and made entirely consistent.

Questions to Ask	Writing the Lines
How many characters are there in the first act? Who are they? They should be written in the order in which they appear.	*Characters* John Cope. Robert Fulton. Major Andre.
Who is discovered first? What is he doing? Who comes in next?	John Cope is seated at his desk studying. Someone knocks at the door. Enter Robert Fulton.
How do the boys greet one another?	John (*closing his book*). Hello, Bob! Fulton. Hello! Haven't you finished your lessons?
Why has John not had his lessons?	John. No. Mr. Andre has not come yet.
Why did Robert Fulton come so early? Why was he anxious to see John?	Fulton. I've got a fine scheme, — a labor saving scheme. I'll just wait around till after Mr. Andre hears your lessons and then we can try it out together.
Do you think John would wait until after his lessons to hear the scheme? Wouldn't you be curious?	John. A scheme? What kind of a scheme?
How would Robert describe it briefly?	Fulton. It's a little machine I am going to put in our boat to save us from hard pulling when you and I go rowing.
Wouldn't John like the idea? What would he say? Would he wish his lessons were over so he could go with Bob? What would John do? Is Mr. Andre coming?	John. That's great, Bob. I wish Mr. Andre would come so I could get these lessons over and go out with you. (*John goes to the window.*) Ah! Here he comes. Say Bob, why don't you explain your scheme to him? He knows nearly everything.

QUESTIONS TO ASK	WRITING THE LINES
Mr. Andre was interesting and companionable. What do you think Robert answers?	FULTON. Maybe he will come with us. Ask him.
Mr. Andre might suspect because John had company that the lessons have not been prepared. What would he ask?	ANDRE. (*enters carrying books*). Well, John have you learned your lessons today?
What would John say? Would he introduce his friend to his teacher?	JOHN. I think so, sir. Mr. Andre, this is my chum, Robert Fulton. The boys call him "Quicksilver Bob."
Would Mr. Andre think "Quicksilver Bob" a queer nickname? Wouldn't he ask more about it?	ANDRE (*shaking hands with Fulton*). "Quicksilver Bob!" That's an odd nickname. How did he get it?
If you look at the notes you have taken, you can answer Mr. Andre's question. Make your answer brief. Who would answer, John or Fulton?	JOHN. You see, Mr. Andre, we call him "Quicksilver Bob" because he always has his pockets full of copper, tin, wire, and stuff he is going to use for some experiment of his.
Do you not think Mr. Andre would be interested? What do you think he would say?	ANDRE (*interested*). So you are experimenting? Have you finished yet?
What would Robert answer?	FULTON. Yes, sir. I have just finished a little machine to put on our rowboat to save rowing.
Would the boys like Mr. Andre to go with them to try out the machine? What would they say?	JOHN. We thought you might go with us and see how it works.
What would Mr. Andre say?	ANDRE. Where is the boat?
What would be John's answer?	JOHN. About two miles down the river.

Questions to Ask	Writing the Lines
Look over your notes. Why was it that Mr. Andre could not go with the boys?	Andre. I am sorry, boys, but I am not allowed to go so far away from the town. You know I am a British Officer and I have given my word to stay in town and not to try to escape.
How would the boys try to persuade him to go with them?	John. Just going down the river is not trying to escape.
What would Mr. Andre answer?	Andre. Nevertheless, I promised not to leave the town. Promises should be kept.
Robert has a notebook with a sketch of his machine in his pocket. What would he do with it?	Fulton (*showing Mr. Andre the sketch*). Here is a sketch of the machine. Perhaps you wouldn't mind looking at it to see if you think it will work. Here it is.
Would Mr. Andre want Robert to explain?	Andre (*looking at the drawing carefully*). Is this the crank? I see it turns from left to right. How about the steering?
Would Robert be able to explain the steering? How would the boat steer?	Fulton. Oh, I have a little rudder in the stern of the boat for that!
Would Mr. Andre like the idea? What would he say? What does he see on the other side of the page? What does he ask?	Andre. Your little scheme looks as though it would work. It's a bright idea. Some day you may be a great inventor. The sketch—(*Mr. Andre happens to turn a page in the note book. The page shows a drawing of a woman's head, beautifully drawn.*) Who drew this?

Questions to Ask	Writing the Lines
	FULTON. I did, sir!
Which of the boys would answer? What would he say?	
Don't you think John was proud of his friend's drawing? What would he say?	JOHN. The book is full of fine drawings, sir.
Among your notes you have a record of what Major Andre said to Fulton. What was it?	ANDRE (*turning several pages and then looking at Fulton*). My boy, you may be an inventor or you may be a painter. Your work will be to find out which.

The Setting of Each Act

A description of the setting for each act should be very carefully written. This will require much reading and real research work. In the case of Act One, the study of Mr. Cope which forms the setting should be described in detail with special reference to the furniture that was used in 1776.

How the Play is to be Used

The play may be used in several ways:

1. Mimeographed copies may be made and sold for the benefit of the school fund.
2. It may be published in the school paper.
3. It may be published in the local newspaper.
4. It may be produced in the school auditorium.

Suggested References

Wise, C. M. *Dramatics for School and Community*. Stewart Kidd. Fine dramatic bibliographies.

Ferris, Helen. *Producing Amateur Entertainments*. E. P. Dutton. Chapters VIII and IX.

Overton, Grace Sloan. *Drama in Education*. The Century Company. Chapter VIII, "The Use of Color in Pictorial Effects."

Taylor, Emerson. *Practical Stage Direction for Amateurs*. E. P. Dutton.

Suggestions on the use of the voice, stage action, rehearsing, make-up, scenery, and lighting.

Mackay, Constance D'Arcy. *Costumes and Scenery for Amateurs*. Henry Holt & Company.

Contains forty-seven excellent historical and period costume plates, with directions for costumery.

McClellan, Elizabeth. *Historical Dress in America*. Jacobs. Contains many helpful illustrations and suggestions on costuming.

Hamilton, Clayton. *The Theory of the Theatre*. Henry Holt & Company.

Chapter II, "The Psychology of the Theatre and Audiences," and Chapter V, "Imitation and Suggestion in the Drama," are especially recommended.

Baker, George Pierce. *Dramatic Technique*. Houghton Mifflin. See Chapter VII, "Characterization," Chapter VIII, "Dialogue," and Chapter IX, "Making a Scenario."

The Mayflower Compact

Prepared by the Mayflower Pilgrims, 1620

In the name of God, Amen; We whose names are under-written, the loyall subjects of our dread soveraigne Lord King James, by ye grace of God of Great Britaine, France and Ireland, King, defender of ye faith, &c., haveing undertaken, for ye glorie of God and advancemente of ye Christian faith, and honour of our King and countrie, a voyage to plant the first colonie in ye Northerne parts of Virginia, doe by these presents solemnly and mutually in ye presence of God, and one of another, covenant and combine ourselves together into a civill body politick, for our better ordering and preservation and furtherance of ye ends aforesaid; and by vertue hereof to enact, constitute and frame such just and equall lawes, ordinances, acts, constitutions and offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most meete and convenient for ye generall good of ye colonie, unto which we promise all due submission and obedience. In witnesse whereof we have here-under subscribed our names, *Cape Cod* 11 of *November*, in the yeare of the raigne of our soveraigne Lord King James of *England*, *France* and *Ireland* 18, and of *Scotland* 54, *Anno Domini*, 1620.

PUBLIC SCHOOL 63, MAN.
121 E. 3rd ST.
LENA KEMP, Prin.

PUBLIC SCHOOL 63, MAN
121 E. 3rd ST.
LENA KEMP, Prin.